



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Harvard College Library

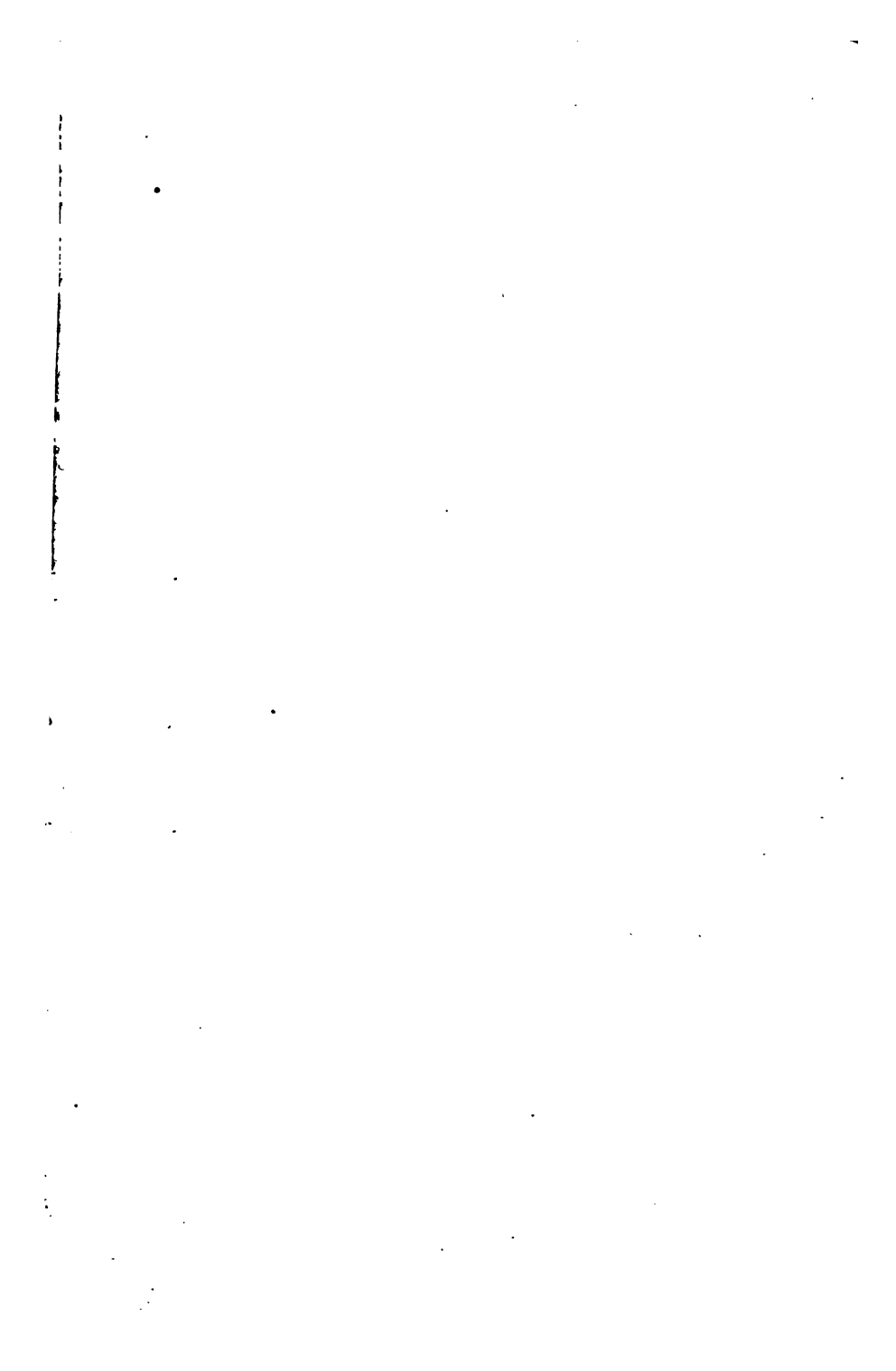
FROM

Laurance I. Neale



3 2044 097 075 030

EducT 918.95.467





FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD (PREBLE),
BENNETT, GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES
ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND
"EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

REVISED BY

JOSEPH H. DRAKE,

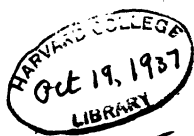
ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1895,

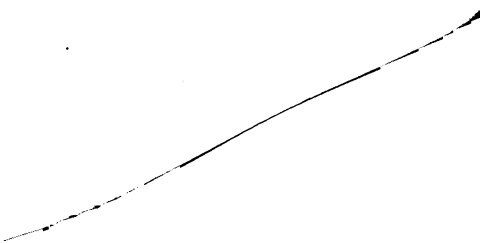
118.95.1167



Laurance I. Neale

COPYRIGHT, 1877, 1886,
BY S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

UNIVERSITY PRESS: JOHN WILSON & SON,
CAMBRIDGE.



PREFACE.

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction.

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman history, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons. Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part, such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily understood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words. *The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflections and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions, so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences. No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile. It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recitations to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To insure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book contains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day* upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class, is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recitation, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

IN this revision the attempt has been made, not to revise out of the book the personality of its author, but simply to make the changes that would commend themselves to him, if he were now living. The teacher will note changes in the following particulars: 1. Vowels that are long by nature are marked with a macron. All unmarked vowels are to be considered short. 'Lewis's Elementary Latin Dictionary' has been followed, except in cases of obvious misprints. The orthography has also been made to conform to the usage of this dictionary. 2. Verb forms have been introduced earlier. This has necessitated some changes in the sentences of Lessons II.-VIII., and the rearrangement of Lessons XIX.-XXIV. 3. A few exercises based on a passage of continuous prose have been inserted after the 'Selections for Reading.' References are made to them in the several Lessons for which they may be substituted, if the teacher thinks best. 4. The grammar references have been changed to conform with the latest editions of the more widely used grammars. The plan of giving references to the grammars instead of incorporating grammar with the text has been retained, because of the almost unanimous preference for this

arrangement, expressed by the many prominent teachers consulted in regard to it.

It is hoped that the sterling honesty and thoroughness of the book, so characteristic of its author, have not been impaired by the changes made.

Thanks are due to Professor John C. Rolfe, of the University of Michigan, and Principal Judson G. Pattengill, of the Ann Arbor High School for useful hints; and, particularly, to Mr. Clarence L. Meader, of the University of Michigan, and Mr. Edward M. Traber, of the Hamilton, Ohio, High School for many valuable suggestions, and for assistance in reading the proofs.

JOSEPH H. DRAKE.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, July, 1895.

CONTENTS.

| | Page |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| ABBREVIATIONS | xiv |
| INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS . . . | 1 |
| LESSON I.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION | 5 |
| LESSON II.—NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS . . | 7 |
| Declension of <i>deus</i> and <i>filia</i> . | |
| LESSON III.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION | 9 |
| Nouns in <i>-us</i> ; Gender. | |
| LESSON IV.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS . | 10 |
| Nouns in <i>-r</i> and <i>-um</i> .—Prepositions used with the Ablative. | |
| LESSON V.—NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS . | 12 |
| Genitive Singular of Nouns in <i>-ius</i> or <i>-ium</i> ; Vocative of <i>filius</i> and proper names in <i>-ius</i> ; Declension of <i>deus</i> .—Use of <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> . | |
| LESSON VI.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . | 14 |
| Declension and Agreement of Adjectives. | |
| LESSON VII.—ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (<i>continued</i>) | 16 |
| Genitive in <i>-ius</i> and Dative in <i>-i</i> . | |
| LESSON VIII.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.—APPOSITION . . . | 17 |
| LESSON IX.—VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS | 19 |
| LESSON X.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION | 19 |
| Personal Endings of the Active Voice; Present Stem; Present Indicative Active of <i>amāre</i> . | |
| LESSON XI.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE | 21 |
| Subject Nominative.—Agreement of Verb.—Direct Object. | |
| LESSON XII.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>) . . . | 23 |
| Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of <i>amāre</i> . | |
| LESSON XIII.—MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS . . . | 24 |

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| LESSON XIV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION; PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; THE PERFECT STEM | 26 |
| LESSON XV.—VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD; USE OF THE IMPERATIVE | 28 |
| LESSON XVI.—VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE | 30 |
| LESSON XVII.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE | 31 |
| Infinitive as Object; Subject of the Infinitive. | |
| LESSON XVIII.—GENERAL EXERCISE.—ABLATIVE OF MEANS | 33 |
| LESSON XIX.—CONJUGATION OF THE VERB SUM | 34 |
| LESSON XX.—THIRD DECLENSION: NOUNS | 35 |
| LESSON XXI.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) | 36 |
| LESSON XXII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) | 37 |
| Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing. | |
| LESSON XXIII.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) | 39 |
| LESSON XXIV.—THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) | 40 |
| LESSON XXV.—PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE | 42 |
| LESSON XXVI.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD | 43 |
| LESSON XXVII.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.—DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS | 45 |
| LESSON XXVIII.—CONJUGATION OF POSSUM.—USE OF THE INFINITIVE | 47 |
| Infinitive without Subject Accusative. | |
| LESSON XXIX.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF AMŌ | 48 |
| LESSON XXX.—REVIEW OF AMŌ.—TWO ACCUSATIVES | 50 |
| LESSON XXXI.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ | 52 |
| Definitions and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice. | |
| LESSON XXXII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (<i>continued</i>) | 53 |
| LESSON XXXIII.—PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (<i>continued</i>) | 55 |
| LESSON XXXIV.—SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF AMŌ | 56 |
| LESSON XXXV.—DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION | 57 |
| LESSON XXXVI.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES | 59 |
| LESSON XXXVII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION | 60 |
| LESSON XXXVIII.—ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>) | 62 |

CONTENTS.

xi

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| LESSON XXXIX.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES | 63 |
| Declension of Comparatives. | |
| LESSON XL.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>) | 65 |
| LESSON XLI.—DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES | 66 |
| LESSON XLII.—ADVERBS | 68 |
| Definition; Derivation; Classification; Comparison; Syntax. | |
| LESSON XLIII.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE | 70 |
| LESSON XLIV.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES | 71 |
| Accusative of Time. | |
| LESSON XLV.—VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE | 73 |
| LESSON XLVI.—DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION | 74 |
| LESSON XLVII.—FOURTH DECLENSION | 76 |
| Declension of <i>domus</i> . | |
| LESSON XLVIII.—FIFTH DECLENSION | 77 |
| LESSON XLIX.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE | 78 |
| LESSON L.—VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE | 80 |
| LESSON LI.—VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES | 82 |
| LESSON LII.—THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN - <i>io</i> | 83 |
| LESSON LIII.—DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS | 84 |
| Ablative with certain Deponents. | |
| LESSON LIV.—GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE | 86 |
| Place to which; Place at or in which; Place from which. | |
| LESSON LV.—NUMERALS.—EXTENT IN SPACE | 88 |
| LESSON LVI.—COMPOUND NOUNS.—ABLATIVE OF TIME | 90 |
| LESSON LVII.—PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE | 91 |
| LESSON LVIII.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): DEMONSTRATIVE | 93 |
| LESSON LIX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): RELATIVE | 94 |
| Declension; Agreement. | |
| LESSON LX.—PRONOUNS (<i>continued</i>): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE | 96 |
| Declension of <i>aliquis</i> . | |
| LESSON LXI.—CONJUNCTIONS | 97 |
| LESSON LXII.—CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES | 99 |
| LESSON LXIII.—PARTICIPLES | 101 |
| Definitions; Distinctions of Tense; Used for a Subordinate Clause. | |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| LESSON LXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE | 103 |
| LESSON LXV.—IRREGULAR VERBS: FERŌ | 105 |
| LESSON LXVI.—COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION | 106 |
| LESSON LXVII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS | 107 |
| LESSON LXVIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS (<i>continued</i>): EŌ AND FIŌ | 109 |
| LESSON LXIX.—DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS | 111 |
| Infinitive as Subject. | |
| LESSON LXX.—THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT | 113 |
| LESSON LXXI.—USE OF THE DATIVE | 115 |
| Dative with Intransitive Verbs. | |
| LESSON LXXII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE | 117 |
| Ablative with Comparatives.—Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. | |
| LESSON LXXIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES | 119 |
| LESSON LXXIV.—USE OF THE DATIVE (<i>continued</i>) | 121 |
| Dative of the Person possessing; Two Datives. | |
| LESSON LXXV.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES | 123 |
| LESSON LXXVI.—USE OF THE GENITIVE | 125 |
| Genitive with Adjectives; Genitive in Predicate; Genitive with certain Verbs. | |
| LESSON LXXVII.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES | 127 |
| LESSON LXXVIII.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE | 129 |
| Ablative expressing Measure of Difference; Ablative of Quality. | |
| LESSON LXXIX.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES | 131 |
| LESSON LXXX.—USE OF THE ABLATIVE (<i>continued</i>) | 133 |
| Ablative of Price; Ablative of Distance; Ablative with Adjectives. | |
| LESSON LXXXI.—CAUSAL CLAUSES | 135 |
| LESSON LXXXII.—TEMPORAL CLAUSES | 137 |
| LESSON LXXXIII.—SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS | 139 |
| LESSON LXXXIV.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE | 141 |
| LESSON LXXXV.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) | 143 |
| LESSON LXXXVI.—INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>) | 145 |
| LESSON LXXXVII.—THE GERUND | 147 |
| LESSON LXXXVIII.—THE GERUNDIVE | 149 |

CONTENTS.

xiii

LESSON LXXXIX.—THE SUPINE 151

LESSON XC.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.—ABBREVIATIONS . . 152

LESSON XCI.—GENERAL EXERCISE 155

LESSON XCII.—GENERAL EXERCISE 157

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES 161

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY 165

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR 171

NOTES 176

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH 183

II. ENGLISH-LATIN 229

ABBREVIATIONS.

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. & G., Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition. | indef., indefinite. |
| A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition. | interrog., interrogative. |
| abl., ablative. | lit., literal, literally. |
| acc., accusative. | LN., Lesson. |
| act., active. | m., masculine. |
| adj., adjective. | n., neuter. |
| B., Bennett's Latin Grammar. | num., numeral. |
| cf., <i>confer</i> , compare. | part., participle. |
| comp., comparative. | pass., passive. |
| conj., conjunction. | perf., perfect. |
| dat., dative. | pers., person. |
| dem., demonstrative. | pl., plural. |
| dep., deponent. | poss., possessive. |
| Ex., Example. | prep., preposition. |
| f., feminine. | pres., present. |
| fr., from. | pron., pronoun. |
| G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar, revised edition. | Ref., Reference. |
| gen., genitive. | rel., relative. |
| H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, re- vised edition. | sc., <i>scilicet</i> , understand. |
| ind., indicative. | sing., singular. |
| indecl., indeclinable. | subst., substantive. |
| | voc., vocative. |
| | VY., Vocabulary. |
| | w., with. |

N. B. — The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (4) refer to such sections.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included : e. g. 2-4 or *a-c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. *Alphabet*; 1, *a*; 2; 3: A. & S. 3-7; 9-12: B. 1; 2, 1: G. 1; 2; 6: H. 2-4, *w. fine print under 3 and 4.*

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (*a*) *Roman Method.* A. & G. 14, *a-d*; 16: A. & S. 15-22: B. 3; 4, 1-4: G. 3; 4; 7; 8; 9: H. 5-8.

(*b*) *English Method.* A. & G. 17, *a-c*, and NOTE: H. 9-14, *w. fine print.*

(*c*) *Continental Method.* H. 15.

3. Quantity. A. & G. 18, *a-f*; 5, *fine print*: A. & S. 26-29; 37 NOTE 1: 38-44: B. 5, A, B: G. 2, 2; 10-13, REMARK: H. 16, I.-III., and NOTES' 2-4.

4. Accent. A. & G. 19, *a-c*, *w. Def.*: A. & S. 25 NOTE 1; 30-35: B. 6, 1-3: G. 15, 1, 2: H. 17; 18.

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. 20; 21; 25, *a-i*; 26; 27: A. & S. 54; 55; 73; 74: B. 10; 11: G. 16; 17, *the whole*: H. 37-40.

6. Gender. A. & G. 28, *a, b*; 29; 30: A. & S. 78-83: B. 13-15: G. 19; 20, I.-III.; 21, 1-3: H. 41; 42, I., II.

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a-g*, NOTE, *h*: A. & S. 85-88, *a*: B. 16; 17, 1-3: G. 22-25: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print*.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *b*: B. 18; 19: G. 26; 27, *the whole*: H. 46, *w. fine print*; 47, *w. NOTE 3*.

NOTE.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left to the teacher. He will find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The following suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the portions of grammar referred to under "**1. Alphabet**," he should turn to the subjoined "**EXERCISE**" and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After learning "**2**," he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the rules under "**2**," and divide the words which they form into syllables. *Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.*

EXERCISE.

HOW THE ANCIENT BRITONS FOUGHT.

Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant,¹ et tēla
 First through all parts they ride and javelins
 coniciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū
 they hurl, and by the very fright of the horses and rattling
 rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant;¹ et
 of the wheels the ranks very often they throw into confusion; and
²cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,
 when themselves among of the horsemen the squadrons they have worked
 runt, ex essedis dēsiliunt,¹ et pedibus proeli-
 in, from [their] war chariots they leap down, and on foot they
 antur.¹ Aurigae interim paulatim ex proeliō
 fight. The charioteers in the meantime gradually from the battle
 excēdunt,¹ atque ita currūs conlocant,¹ ut sī illī ā
 withdraw, and so [their] chariots place, that if they by

multitūdine hostium premantur,¹expeditum ad suōs
 a great number of enemies are hard pressed, [an] easy to their own [men]
 receptum² habeant.¹ Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabili-
 retreat they may have. So the activity of horsemen, the firm-
 tātem peditum in proeliis praestant.¹
 ness of foot soldiers in battles they evince.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Notice that the verb regularly comes last in a Latin clause or sentence.

² Observe the peculiarity of the order of the Latin. Change the English translation of *cum . . . insinuāvērunt* so as to read, *when they have worked themselves in among the squadrons of horsemen.*

³ What is the quantity of the penult of *receptum*? Why? (3) Which syllable is accented? Why? (4) *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

N. B. In this book all long vowels are marked with a macron (-). Give every unmarked vowel its short sound, even if the *syllable* in which it stands is long because of the position of the vowel. See A. & G. 18, d: A. & S. 28: B. 5, B, c): G. 12, 2: H. 16, I., 2, NOTE 2



FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.



LESSON I.

NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. NOTE, 35 ; 36, c : A. & S. 91-93 : B. 20 ; 21, 1, 2, c : G. 26 ; 29, REMARK 2 ; 30 : H. 46, 1 ; 48, 1, 2, 4.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent.⁴ Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| causa, -ae, ¹ f. ² | cause, reason. |
| Genāva, -ae, f. | Geneva. ³ |
| glōria, -ae, f. | glory, honor. |
| lingua, -ae, f. | tongue, language. |
| memoria, -ae, f. | memory. |
| ripa, -ae, f. | bank (of a stream). |
| via, -ae, f. | way, road. |

¹ *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of *causa*, substitute *ae* for final *a* : e. g. Nom. *causa*, Gen. *causae*.

² In the Vocabularies, *f.* stands for *feminine gender*, *m.* for *masculine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

³ For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabulary, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

⁴ Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often. Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented*.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe¹ each word.

1. Causa.² 2. Glōriārum.³ 3. Rīpae. 4. Linguā.⁴
5. Memoriā.⁵ 6. Linguās. 7. Viā. 8. Rīpās. 9. Memoriae. 10. Glōriae. 11. Causās. 12. Viam. 13. Memorias. 14. Via. 15. Glōriam. 16. Linguārum. 17. Causīs.
18. Rīpā. 19. Genāvae.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Of a² cause. 2. Of the causes. 3. With glory.
4. For glory. 5. With tongues. 6. In the language.
7. O Memory! 8. In memory. 9. Of the banks.
10. By the way.

N. B. In writing Latin, *every long vowel should be marked with a macron (-)*.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

² The Latin language has no article. In translating Latin nouns into English, *a*, *an* or *the* may be supplied according to the sense. E. g. *causa* may be rendered *a cause*, *the cause*, or simply *cause*.

³ Which syllable of *glōriārum* is accented? Why? (4)

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of *linguā*? Why? (3)

⁵ The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun: e. g. *memoriā*, *in memory*; *linguā*, *in the language*.

⁶ Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun: e. g. *Rōmae*, *at Rome*, or *in Rome*.

LESSON II

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of dea and filia. A. & G. 36, c: A. & S. 93, c: B. 21, 2, c; G. 29, REMARK 4; 30: H. 49, 4.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. 260: A. & S. 428: B. 141; 142: G. 416; 418: H. 432.

EXAMPLES.¹

1. Iūlia (subject) amat (predicate), *Julia loves.*
2. Iūlia deam (direct object) amat, *Julia loves the goddess.*
3. Iūlia est (copula) bona (predicate adjective), *Julia is good.*

¹ N. B. The EXAMPLES should always be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| ad, prep. w. acc. ¹ | to. |
| amat, verb, | (he, she, it) loves. |
| bona, adj. f. | good. |
| dat, verb, | (he, she, it) gives. |
| dea, -ae, f. | goddess. |
| est, verb, | (he, she, it) is. |
| filia, -ae, f. | daughter. |
| Iūlia, -ae, f. | Julia. |
| lāta, adj. f. | broad, wide. |
| māgna, adj. f. | large, big, great. |
| Mātrona, -ae, m. | the Marne. |
| per, prep. w. acc. | through. |
| properat, verb, | (he, she, it) hastens. |
| prōvincia, -ae, f. | province. |
| silva, -ae, f. | forest. |
| sunt, verb, | (they) are. |
| trāns, prep. w. acc. | across. |
| ubi, adv. | where. |

¹ "prep. w. acc." signifies that ad is a preposition used with the Accusative.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad ripam¹ properat. 2. Deam amat.² 3. Ad ripam Mātronaē³ properat.⁴ 4. Trāns Mātronam properat. 5. Dea⁵ est bona.⁶ 6. Deae sunt bonae.⁶ 7. Fīliae deārum sunt bonae. 8. Via per silvam est lāta. 9. Fīlia Iūliae in silvā⁷ est. 10. Prōvincia est māgna. 11. Genāva in prōvinciā est. 12. Deae in silvīs sunt. 13. Iūlia filiābus⁸ prōvinciam⁹ dat. 14. Ubi est dea? Dea in silvā est.

Write in Latin.¹¹

1. (She loves² Julia. 2. Julia hastens to¹⁰ the Marne. 3. Julia hastens through the province. 4. The goddess is good. 5. The goddess loves Julia. 6. The memory of the goddess is good. 7. The goddess is in the forest. 8. Julia gives a daughter to the goddesses. 9. Where is Julia? Julia is in the province.)

Notes and Questions.

¹ When a noun is used with a preposition, give the rule referred to under 12.

² The subject of the verb *amat* seems to be omitted but is really expressed in the Personal Ending *t*. Translate *amat* by *he*, or *she*, or *it loves*.

³ Give the rule for the gender of *Mātronae* (*6*).

⁴ The verb usually comes last in a Latin sentence, except *est* and *sunt* and other forms of the same verb used as a copula, which may be placed either between the subject and predicate or at the end of the sentence.

⁵ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁶ In Latin as in English a predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case. Note that the adjective has the same ending as the noun.

⁷ See LN. V., 19 and Vy. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between *silvā* and *silvā*? The place *where* is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in*.

⁸ Indirect object of the verb.

⁹ Direct object of the verb.

¹⁰ Translate by the proper preposition.

¹¹ See LN. I., N. B.

LESSON III.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION.

13. Nouns in -us. A. & G. 38, servus; 40, a: A. & S. 95, dominus; 97 (3): B. 23, hortus; 25, 5: G. 31; 33, hortus, REMARK 3: H. 51, servus, 1, 2, 1)-3), 8.

14. Gender. A. & G. 39: A. & S. 95: B. 23: G. 34: H. 51.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ante, prep. w. acc. | before. |
| amicitia, -ae, f. | friendship. |
| amicus, -i, m. | friend. |
| bonus, ¹ adj., m. | good. |
| carrus, -i, m. | cart, wagon. |
| contrā, prep. w. acc. | against. |
| Germānī, -ōrum, m. | the Germans. |
| lātus, ¹ adj., m. | broad, wide. |
| lēgātus, -i, m. | legate, lieutenant. |
| māgnus, ¹ adj., m. | large, big, great. |
| numerus, -i, m. | number. |
| oculus, -i, m. | eye. |
| populus, -i, m. | people. |
| pūgnat, verb, | (he, she, it) fights. |
| Rhēnus, -i, m. | the Rhine. |
| Rhodanus, -i, m. | the Rhone. |

¹ bonus, lātus, and māgnus are masculine forms of the adjectives of which bona, lāta, and māgna are feminine forms.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Populī.¹ 2. Popule. 3. Populis. 4. Amicitia populī. 5. Fīlia lēgātī.² 6. Populī³ amīcīs. 7. Lēgātus ante oculōs populī pūgnat. 8. Rhēnus est lātus.⁴ 9. Rhodanus est māgnus.⁴ 10. Germānī sunt bonī.⁴ 11. Dea contrā Germānōs pūgnat. 12. Lēgātus est

amicus⁵ populi.² 13. Lēgātus trāns Rhodanum pro-
perat. 14. Ubi sunt silvae? Silvae in prōvinciā sunt.

Write in Latin.⁶

1. Of a friend. 2. To a friend. 3. O friend. 4. Against
a friend. 5. Of friends. (6. The friends of the Germans.
7. The wagon is large.⁴ 8. The Rhone is wide.⁴ 9. The
legate fights against the friends of the Germans. 10. He
fights against the Germans. 11. The friend of the
people loves the Germans. 12. The people are good.⁴
13. Where are the Germans? The Germans are in the
forest.)

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the stem of *populi*? What are the case-endings of the Second Declension? Which cases are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension? What is the rule of gender for the Second Declension? (14) What is the rule of gender for the First Declension? What are the general rules for gender? (6)

² The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case: *filia lēgātī* is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter*.

³ The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic: e. g., *filia amīci*, *the friend's daughter*; but *amīci filia*, *the friend's daughter*.

⁴ See LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁵ A predicate noun agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

⁶ See LN. I., N. B.



LESSON IV.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in -r and -um. A. & G. 38: A. & S. 95: B. 23: G. 31; 33: H. 51, 2, 3)–6), 4, 1).

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative. A. & G. 152, b: A. & S. 430: B. 142: G. 417: H. 434.

N. B. The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ā , ab, ¹ prep. w. abl. | <i>from, by.</i> |
| ager , agri, m. | <i>field, territory.</i> |
| amant , verb, | <i>(they) love.</i> |
| bellum , -i, n. | <i>war.</i> |
| cum , prep. w. abl. | <i>with.</i> |
| dant , verb, | <i>(they) give.</i> |
| dē , prep. w. abl. | <i>down from, concerning, for.</i> |
| ē , ex, ¹ prep. w. abl. | <i>out of.</i> |
| frūmentum , -i, n. | <i>grain.</i> |
| gener , generi, m. | <i>son-in-law.</i> |
| Helvētīi , -ōrum, m. | <i>the Helvetii.</i> |
| properant , verb, | <i>(they) hasten.</i> |
| puer , pueri, m. | <i>boy.</i> |
| pūgnant , verb, | <i>(they) fight.</i> |
| rēgnum , -i, n. | <i>sovereignty, kingdom.</i> |
| sine , prep. w. abl. | <i>without.</i> |
| templum , -i, n. | <i>temple.</i> |
| vir , viri, m. | <i>man.</i> |

¹ **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse¹ the nouns used with prepositions.

1. Pueri,² puerorum. 2. Generō, generis. 3. Agri Helvētiōrum. 4. Cum viris pūgnant. 5. Germāni Rhēnum amant.³ 6. Dē rēgnō pūgnant. 7. Helvētīi sine causā pūgnant. 8. Pueri ex templō properant. 9. Bellum cum Germānis. 10. Agri sunt magni.⁴ 11. Viri Helvētīi⁵ frūmentum⁶ dant. 12. Ā silvā properat.

Write in Latin.

1. Before the war with the Germans. 2. The grain is in⁷ the field. 3. They hasten out of the temple. 4. The Germans fight without cause. 5. The man's⁸ daughters are in⁷ the province. 6. The Germans fight with the Helvetii. 7. He fights for sovereignty. 8. The boys are in⁷ the forest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing a noun.* — *cum viris*: *viris* is a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *viro*; declined, singular, *vir*, *virī*, *virō*, *virum*, *vir*, *virō*; plural, *virī*, *virōrum*, *virīs*, *virōs*, *virī*, *virīs*; it is in the Ablative plural and used with the preposition *cum*; rule (16). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in *r* drop? *Ans.* The Nominative *us* and the Vocative *e*. To which declension does *puerī* belong? Why? *prōvincia*? Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (*s*)

³ The elements of a verb in the Present Tense are *stem* and *personal ending*: e. g., *ama nt* ^{love they} has the stem *ama*, *love*; and the Personal ending *nt*, *they*.

⁴ See LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁵ Indirect object of the verb.

⁷ See LN. II., NOTE 7.

⁶ Direct object of the verb.

⁸ See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON V.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in *-ius* or *-ium* generally form the Genitive Singular with one *i*, while the position of the accent remains unchanged; *Cassī*, of *Cassius*; *fiīlī*, of the son; *cōnsillī*, of counsel.

18. *Vocative of filius and proper names in -ius.* A. & G. 40, c: A. & S. 97 (5): B. 25, 1: G. 33, 2: H. 51, 5.

19. *Use of in and sub.* A. & G. 152, c: A. & S. 431: B. 143: G. 418: H. 435, I.

20. *deus* — stem *DEO* — is declined as follows:

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. <i>deus</i> , | <i>deī, diī, dī.</i> |
| Gen. <i>deī</i> , | <i>deōrum, deūm.</i> |
| Dat. <i>deō</i> , | <i>deīs, diīs, dis.</i> |
| Acc. <i>deum</i> , | <i>deōs.</i> |
| Voc. <i>deus</i> , | <i>deī, diī, dī.</i> |
| Abl. <i>deō</i> , | <i>deīs, diīs, dis.</i> |

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| amō, verb, | (I) love. |
| Cassius, -ī, m. | Cassius. |
| castrum, -ī, n. | fort; pl. camp. |
| concilium, -ī, n. | council, assembly. |
| cōnsilium, -ī, n. | counsel, plan. |
| deus, -ī (see 20), | god. |
| dō, verb, | (I) give. |
| equus, -ī, m. | horse. |
| et, conj. | and. |
| filius, -ī, m. | son. |
| in, prep. w. acc. or abl. | into, in. |
| iugum, -ī, n. | yoke. |
| Lūcius, -ī, m. | Lucius. |
| oppidum, -ī, n. | town. |
| portō, verb, | (I) carry, ¹ bear. |
| pūgnō, verb, | (I) fight. |
| sub, prep. w. acc. or abl. | under. |
| sum, verb, | (I) am. |

¹ What is the translation of (he) carries?

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns used with prepositions.

1. Deōs et¹ deās amō. 2. Cassiō equum dō. 3. Cum Lūciō pūgnō. 4. In² conciliō sum. 5. Puer est in² oppidō. 6. In² castra³ frūmentum portō. 7. Frūmentum est sub⁴ castrō. 8. Sub⁴ castrum frūmentum portō. 9. Filiō Lūci⁵ iugum dō. 10. Ubi est equus? Equus in agrō est. 11. Cōnsilium lēgātī est bonum.⁶ 12. Ō fili Lūci Cassī.

Write in Latin.

1. I love the gods. 2. He hastens into the town. 3. I am in the camp. 4. The horse is under the yoke. 5. Where is Lucius? Lucius is in the town. 6. I fight with the Germans. 7. Julia's⁷ plan is good.⁶

Notes and Questions.

¹ *et* is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. *et* connects similar constructions; hence *ad* is used with *deas* just as it is with *deos*.

² Observe carefully the difference in meaning between *in* used with the Accusative and *in* used with the Ablative.

³ Observe that *castrum* means in the Singular *a fort*, "but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a rampart and a trench.

⁴ Observe that the Accusative is used with *sub*, when the verb on which it depends expresses *motion toward a place*; the ablative, when the verb denotes *rest in a place*.

⁵ See 17.

⁶ *bonum* adj. n. *good*. Compare LN. II., NOTE 6.

⁷ See LN. III., NOTE 2.



LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. Learn the declension of *bonus* (*cārus*). A. & G. 81: A. & S. 143: B. 63: G. 73: H. 146-148.

22. Agreement of Adjectives. A. & G. 186: A. & S. 332: B. 234: G. 289: H. 438.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>bonus</i> , -a, ¹ -um, ¹ | <i>good</i> . |
| <i>cārus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>dear, beloved</i> . |
| <i>exemplum</i> , -ī, n. | <i>example</i> . |
| <i>fugit</i> , verb, | (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>flees, escapes</i> . |
| <i>lacrima</i> , -ae, f. | <i>tear</i> . |
| <i>māgnus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>great, big, large</i> . |
| <i>malus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>bad</i> . |
| <i>multus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>much</i> ; pl. <i>many</i> . |
| -ne, ² | an interrogative particle. |
| <i>parvus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>small</i> . |
| <i>reliquus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>remaining</i> . |
| <i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>Roman</i> . |

¹ -a and -um are the feminine and neuter endings : recite as if it were printed **bonus, bona, bonum**.

² This is added to the first or principal word in a sentence as the sign of a question. It throws the accent on the syllable immediately preceding it: e. g. *pūgnā́tne, does he fight?*

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Bonus¹ vir est in templō. 2. Cārus² Cassī filius in silvā est. 3. Exemplum est malum. 4. Ex māgnō oppidō fugit. 5. Multī equī sunt māgnī. 6. Puerī multī et parvī³ sunt in oppidō. 7. Multis cum lacrimīs ex conciliō fugit. 8. Suntne virī bonī? Virī sunt bonī. 9. Fugitne? Fugit.

Write in Latin.

1. He carries grain through the large⁴ towns. 2. The remaining fields are small. 3. They give many large towns to the Roman⁵ people. 4. The example is bad. 5. With many tears she flees from the camp. 6. Many beloved friends are in the fort. 7. Are the remaining towns small? The remaining towns are small.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.*—**bonus vir**: **bonus** is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions; Stems, **bono** and **bona**; declined, Singular, *bonus, bona, bonum*; *bonī, bonae, bonī*; *bonō, bonae, bonō*; *bonum, bonam, bonum*; *bone, bona, bonum*; *bonō, bonā, bonō*; Plural, *bonī, bonae, bona*; *bonōrum, bonārum, bonōrum*; *bonīs, bonīs, bonīs*; *bonōs, bonās, bona*; *bonī, bonae, bona*; *bonīs, bonīs, bonīs*; it is in the Nominative Singular Masculine to agree with its noun **vir**; rule (22). Repeat the rule. 'No general law can be laid down for the position of adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.' B. 350, 4.

² When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a Genitive, the regular order is: Adjective, Genitive, Noun.

³ The Romans wrote **multī et parvī**, *many AND small*; the English write *many small*, without the conjunction.

⁴ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its noun (see 22).

⁵ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people*, the adjective always follows its noun.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82: A. & S. 143: B. 64, 65: G. 73: H. 149, 150.

24. *Genitive in -ius and Dative in -i.* A. & G. 83, a: A. & S. 145; 146: B. 66, 1, 2: G. 76, 1, 2: H. 151, 1.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in *-ius*, and Dative in *-i* should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>aeger, aegra, aegrum,</i> | <i>sick.</i> |
| <i>alius, alia, aliud,</i> | <i>other, another.</i> |
| <i>liber, libera, liberum,</i> | <i>free.</i> |
| <i>miser, misera, miserum,</i> | <i>wretched.</i> |
| <i>nūllus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>none, no.</i> |
| <i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i> | <i>beautiful.</i> |
| <i>sōlus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>alone.</i> |
| <i>tener, tenera, tenerum,</i> | <i>tender, delicate.</i> |
| <i>tōtus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>whole, entire.</i> |
| <i>ūllus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>any.</i> |
| <i>ūnus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>one.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.

1. *Filia Cassi¹ est tenera.* 2. *Virī sunt aegri.* 3. *Per māgnam silvam fugit.* 4. *Cum Helvētiis liberis pūgnat.* 5. *Virī multī et miseri² in prōvinciā sunt.* 6. *Helvētius sōlus fugit.* 7. *Ūnus vir est bonus.* 8. *In aliud³ oppidum fugit.* 9. *Nūllum bellum est bonum.* 10. *Sine ūllā causā pūgnat.* 11. *Amatne Cassius filium Lūcī? Cassius filium Lūcī amat.* 12. *Ūnus ē filiis⁴ Cassī trāns Rhodanum fugit.* 13. *In⁵ prōvinciā est.*

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ How does *filia Cassi* differ from *Cassi filia*? (LN. III., NOTE 3.)
- ² See LN. VI., NOTE 3.
- ³ What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of *alius*? The Genitive Singular? The Dative Singular?
- ⁴ Translate *unus ē filiis* as if it read *unus filiorum*.
- ⁵ How is *in* to be rendered when used with the Ablative?



LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPPOSITION.

25. *Appositives*. A. & G. 183; 184: A. & S. 324; 325: B. 169, 1, 2: G. 320; 321: H. 359, NOTE 2; 363.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ad oppidum Genāvam* (appositive) *properat*, *He hastens to the town of Geneva.*
2. *Titus Labiēnus lēgātus* (appositive) *est aeger*, *Titus Labienus the lieutenant is sick.*

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>aedificium</i> , -ī, n. | <i>building, edifice.</i> |
| <i>arma</i> , ¹ -ōrum, n. | <i>arms, weapons.</i> |
| <i>Belgae</i> , -ārum, m. | <i>the Belgae.</i> |
| <i>cōpia</i> , -ae, f. | <i>plenty; pl. troops.</i> |
| <i>Gallia</i> , -ae, f. | <i>Gaul, ancient France.</i> |
| <i>Labiēnus</i> , -ī, m. | <i>Labienus.</i> |
| <i>locus</i> , ² -ī, m. | <i>place.</i> |
| <i>mātūrus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>ripe.</i> |
| <i>periculum</i> , -ī, n. | <i>danger.</i> |
| <i>privātus</i> , -a, -um, | <i>private.</i> |
| <i>Sēquanī</i> , -ōrum, m. | <i>the Sequani.</i> |
| <i>Titus</i> , -ī, m. | <i>Titus.</i> |
| <i>victōria</i> , -ae, f. | <i>victory.</i> |

¹ *arma*, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

² *locus* is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows: Nom., *loci* and *loca*; Gen., *locōrum*; Dat., *locis*; Acc., *locōs* and *loca*; Voc., *loci* and *loca*; Abl., *locis*.

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or used with prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. Cum Titō¹ Labiēnō lēgātō pūgnat. 2. Cum filiābus² pulchrīs Titī Labiēnī ad oppidum Genāvam³ properat. 3. Ex oppidō Genāvā³ fugit. 4. Frūmentum in agrīs est mātūrum. 5. Cōpia frūmentī mātūrī est in agrō. 6. Titus in⁴ Galliam fugit. Cassius in⁴ Galliā est. 7. Ex⁵ prōvinciā Galliā properant. Ā⁶ prōvinciā Galliā properant. 8. Cum cōpiīs Belgārum trāns Rhodanum⁶ in Galliam fugit. 9. Nulla victōria sine armīs. 10. Lūciō reliqua prīvāta aedificia dat. 11. Helvētīi in multis locīs pūgnant. 12. Pūgnantne sine periculō? Sine periculō pūgnant.

Write in Latin.

1. We hasten through the entire town. 2. We hasten through the entire town of Geneva. 3. He flees into the province of Gaul with Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 4. The Sequani alone of the Gauls are wretched. 5. The Belgae fight with Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 6. Are the sons of Cassius good? One of the sons⁷ of Cassius is good.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (6) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension? (9) Of the Second Declension? (14)

² What irregular case-endings have *dea* and *filia*? (11)

³ See 25 and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative? Which with both the Ablative and Accu-

sative? When are *in* and *sub* used with the Ablative? When with the Accusative? (16, 19)

⁶ *ē, ex* signifies *out of, from*, in the sense of *from within* a place; *ē, ab, from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁶ Which syllable of *Rhodanus* takes the accent? Why? (4)

⁷ See LN. VII., NOTE 4.



LESSON IX.

VERBS: PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar: Use of the Verb; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs; Active Voice; Use of the Indicative Mood; Use of the Present Tense; Person and Number; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a-d*; 111; 121; 122, *a*; 264; 276.

A. & S. 190-193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, *a, b*; 461.

B. 94; 95; 97; 98; 257; 271.

G. 16, 4; 112, 1-4; 213; 253; 254; 227; 120, 1.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

EXERCISE.

Review the verbs given in preceding vocabularies and parse the verb forms used in the preceding exercises; i. e., state the voice, mood, tense, person, and number of each form, and give the reasons for your statements.



LESSON X.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.

A. & G. 21; 116, SING. PLUR.: A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1): B. 96; 97, I, 1: G. 114, 1, 2: H. 247, PERSON., ACT., MEANING; 250.

28. The Present Stem is formed from the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending *re* in the First, Second, and Fourth

Conjugations, and **ere** in the Third : e. g. **PUTĀre** is a Present Infinitive Active and **PUTĀ** its Present Stem ; so **DĪC** from **DĪcere**.

29. Learn the *conjugation*¹ and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of **amō**. A. & G. 128 : A. & S. 222 : B. 101 : G. 122 : H. 205 ; 247, 1.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (§7) to the Present Stem (§8) ; also that the *first person singular* takes the termination **ō**, which absorbs the final stem-vowel **ā**.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| amō, amāre, | <i>love.</i> ² |
| convocō, convocāre, | <i>call together, summon.</i> |
| cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, | <i>establish, strengthen.</i> |
| importō, importāre, | <i>bring in, import.</i> |
| occupō, occupāre, | <i>seize, occupy.</i> |
| vāstō, vāstāre, | <i>lay waste, devastate.</i> |

Pronounce ; translate ; inflect the verbs and give their elements.³

1. Importās,⁴ importātis, importāmus. 2. Amāmus, amant, amat. 3. Convocō, convocās, convocat. 4. Convocāmus, convocātis, convocant. 5. Cōfirmant, cōfirmātis, cōfirmāmus. 6. Cōfirmat, cōfirmās, cōfirmō. 7. Occupō, amās, importat. 8. Importō, amātis, occupant. 9. Occupāmus, importātis, amō. 10. Occupās, occupat, occupātis. 11. Importāsne ? Importō.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving. 2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate. 3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon. 4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates. 5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

² Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with the aid of the grammar.

³ The elements of a verb in the present tense are the *stem* and *personal ending*: e. g. *amāmus* has the stem *amā*, signifying *love*, and the personal ending *mus*, signifying *we*. Compare LN. IV., NOTE 3.

⁴ *importās* may be rendered *you are importing, you do import, or you import*; translate each verb the three ways.

⁵ What is the Present Stem of *putāre*? What does the personal ending *nt* signify? *mus*? *s*? *tis*? Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (28)



LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. 171; 172; 180; 181: A. & S. 309-311: B. 161, 1; 163; 164: G. 201; 202: H. 346; 347; 350; 356, 1, 2; 358; 360.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. 173: A. & S. 316: B. 166: G. 203: H. 368.

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. 204: A. & S. 316: B. 254, 1: G. 211: H. 460.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. 237: A. & S. 392: B. 172: G. 330: H. 371.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Puer* (subject) *amat* (predicate), *the boy loves*.
2. *Titus concilium* ¹ (direct object) *convocat*, *Titus summons a council*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>dē</i> , prep. w. abl. | <i>down from, concerning, for.</i> |
| <i>expūgnō, expūgnāre</i> , | <i>storm, capture.</i> |
| <i>Gallus, -ī, m.</i> | <i>a Gaul.</i> |
| <i>imperium, -ī, n.</i> | <i>empire, supreme power.</i> |
| <i>pūgnō, pūgnāre</i> , | <i>fight, contend.</i> |
| <i>Rōmānus, -ī, m.</i> | <i>a Roman.</i> |
| <i>servus, -ī, m.</i> | <i>slave.</i> |
| <i>vēxō, vēxāre</i> , | <i>disturb, harass.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² oppidum³ expūgnat.⁴ 2. Helvētīi oppidum expūgnant. 3. Galli tōtum⁵ oppidum occupant. 4. Galli multa oppida occupant. 5. Sēquanī agrōs vāstant. 6. Agrōs pulchrōs vāstāmus.⁶ 7. Māgnōs agrōs vāstās. 8. Cassius concilium⁷ convocat. 9. Germānī Gallōs vēxant. 10. Rōmānī oppidum Genāvam⁸ expūgnant. 11. Titus Labiēnus lēgātus oppidum occupat. 12. Rōmānī dē imperiō⁹ pūgnant. 13. Dē imperiō pūgnāmus. 14. Dē imperiō pūgnātis.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.¹⁰ 3. The Gauls are storming the town.¹ 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

² See 32 and LN. IV., NOTE 1.

³ See 34.

⁴ Why is *expūgnat* in the third person singular? (33)

⁵ See 24 and 22. Which adjectives have their Genitive in *-ius* and Dative in *-i*?

⁶ The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone; hence *vāstāmus* includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate: *devastate we.*
vāstā - mus.

⁷ See 17.

⁹ See 16.

⁸ See 25.

¹⁰ See LN. X., NOTE 4.

LESSON XII.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.—IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of *amō*. A. & G. 118 (*for endings*); 128 (*for conjugation*): A. & S. 222; 224, 1, 2: B. 96; 97, I., 1; 101: G. 114, 1, 2, (b); 122; 132; 133: H. 205; 247, 1; 243.

36. *Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses.* A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 260, 1-3; 261: G. 231; 242: H. 468; 470.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, *ba* in the Imperfect and *bi* in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination *ō*, like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future *u* takes the place of *i*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Aquilēia</i> , -ae, f. | <i>Aquileia</i> . |
| <i>Aquitānia</i> , -ae, f. | <i>Aquitania</i> . |
| <i>Aquitānī</i> , -ōrum, m. | <i>the Aquitani</i> . |
| <i>circum</i> , prep. w. acc. | <i>around, near</i> . |
| <i>Helvētius</i> , -a, -um, | <i>of the Helvetii</i> . |
| <i>hiemō</i> , <i>hiemāre</i> , | <i>pass the winter</i> . |
| <i>superō</i> , <i>superāre</i> , | <i>overcome</i> . |

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Titus rēgnum occupat.
2. Titus rēgnum occupābat.
3. Titus rēgnum occupābit.
4. Rēgnum occupābāmus.
5. Rēgnum occupābimus.
6. Rēgnum occupābō.
7. Cō-piae² circum Aquilēiam³ hiemābant.
8. Aquitānī circum Genāvam hiemābunt.
9. Aquitānōs superābis.
10. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superābunt.
11. Gallī multa loca⁴ in Aquitāniā⁵ occupant.
12. Multī Germānī agrōs Helvētiōs vāstābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome. 2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm. 3. Titus will storm the town. 4. Titus was storming the town. 5. Titus storms many towns. 6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia. 7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva. 8. The Gauls were fighting for ⁶ empire. 9. The Romans fight for glory.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem, tense-sign, personal ending*: e. g. ^{love will you} *amā - bi - tis* has the Stem *amā*, *love*; the Future Tense-Sign *bi*, *will*; the Personal Ending *tis*, *you*.

² What meaning has *cōpiæ* in the Singular? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See 12.

⁴ Decline *locā*. LN. VIII., Vy., NOTE 2.

⁵ See 19.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning*, *about*, is to be rendered by *dē*.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found? (28) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete, repeated, or attempted action*.



LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a, b*; 179: G. 288, I., II.; 327, I., II.: H. 357, 1; 359, NOTE 1; 361, 1.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224: A. & S. 374, (2): B. 187, I.: G. 345: H. 384, I., II.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213: A. & S. 351: B. 195: G. 360, 1, 2; 362: H. 395.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Titus Labiēnus lēgātus cōnsilia Gallōrum ēnūntiat,**¹ *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*
2. **Cassius Titō filiam in mātirimōnium dat,**² *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, **Titus Labiēnus** is the subject and is modified by **lēgātus**, an appositive; **cōnsilia Gallōrum ēnūntiat** is the predicate and is made up of the verb **ēnūntiat** and its modifier **cōnsilia**, a direct object; **cōnsilia** is modified by **Gallōrum**, a genitive.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified; **Titō filiam in mātirimōnium dat** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dat** and its modifiers, viz.: **Titō**, an indirect object; **filiam**, a direct object; and **in mātirimōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| dō, dare, | <i>give.</i> |
| ēnūntiō, ēnūntiāre, | <i>report.</i> |
| mātirimōnium, -i, n. | <i>marriage.</i> |
| in mātirimōnium dare, | <i>to give in marriage.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² cōnsilia Belgārum³ ēnūntiābit. 2. Rōmānīs⁴ cōnsilia Belgārum ēnūntiābit. 3. Titus filiam in⁵ mātirimōnium dabit.⁶ 4. Ubi est Cassius filius Lūcī lēgātī? 5. Cassius in prōvinciā Aquitāniā est. 6. Helvētīi multa loca in Aquitāniā occupant. 7. Cassius concilium Rōmānōrum convocat. 8. Deōs⁷ et deās⁸ in templa convocat. 9. Rōmānī oppida multa et magna⁹ expūgnābant. 10. Amicitiam cum Helvētīis cōfirmant. 11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppidum ūllō¹⁰ sinē periculō occupābitis. 12. Gallī agrōs multōs et pulchrōs⁹ in Aquitāniā vāstābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; see NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of *Cassius*? (17 and 18)

³ See 40.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase*; when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase*; when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase*.

⁶ Observe that in *đō* the characteristic *a* is short; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See 20.

⁸ See 11.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 3.

¹⁰ See 24.



LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of *amō*. A. & G. 118; 128: A. & S. 210; 213 (2); 222; 224 (5): B. 101; 118, 1; 96: G. 122: H. 205; 243, TENSE-SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; 247, 1, 2.

42. *Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.* A. & G. 280; 281: A. & S. 462 (2), (3): B. 263; 264: G. 241; 244: H. 472; 473.

43. *What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative?* A. & G. 115, c; 279: A. & S. 462 (1): B. 262: G. 235; 239: H. 471, I., II.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like the same tenses of *amō*. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem and denote *completed action*.

45. *The Perfect Stem* is found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping the ending *ī*: e. g. Perfect Indicative *vāstāvī*, Perfect Stem *vāstāv*.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| cōfirmō, | cōfirmāre, | cōfirmāvī, ¹ | <i>establish, strengthen.</i> |
| convocō, | convocāre, | convocāvī, | <i>call together, summon.</i> |
| dō, | dare, | dedī, ² | <i>give.</i> |
| expūgnō, | expūgnāre, | expūgnāvī, | <i>storm, capture.</i> |
| hiemō, | hiemāre, | hiemāvī, | <i>pass the winter.</i> |
| occupō, | occupāre, | occupāvī, | <i>seize, occupy.</i> |
| Rōma, -ae, f. | | | <i>Rome.</i> |
| superō, | superāre, | superāvī, | <i>overcome, subdue.</i> |
| vāstō, | vāstāre, | vāstāvī, | <i>lay waste, devastate.</i> |
| vēxō, | vēxāre, | vēxāvī, | <i>disturb, harass.</i> |

¹ In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active are given.

² See LN. XIII., NOTE 6; observe that the *Perfect stem* of *dō* is *ded*.

Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative Mood of each verb.

1. Cassius multōs agrōs vāstāvit.² 2. Concilium Gallōrum convocāverō.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppidum occupāverant. 4. Helvētīi castra occupāverint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vāstāvērunt.² 6. Amīcitiam cum Rōmānīs cōfirmāverit. 7. Cōpiaē circum Rōmam hiemāvēre.² 8. Cassius Titō filiā in mātirimōnium dedit.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētiōs vēxāvērunt.² 10. Sēquanī Germānōs superāvērunt.² 11. Circum Rōmam hiemāverant. 12. Oppidum Aquilēiam occupāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a

daughter in marriage to the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular* of each tense: e. g. the synopsis of **vāstāvit** is *vāstō, vāstābam, vāstābō, vāstāvi, vāstāveram, vāstāverō*.

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses: **Cassius vāstāvit**, *Cassius has laid waste*, and *Cassius laid waste*. (See 43)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they denote? (44) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do they denote? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action *is completed* in what time? (42) The Future Perfect? The Present Tense denotes that an action *is going on* in what time? (26) The Imperfect Tense? (36) The Future Tense? Give the elements of each verb in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses: e. g. ^{loved had they} **amāv-erā-nt** has the Perfect Stem **amāv**, *loved*; the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **erā**, *had*; the Personal Ending **nt**, *they*.



LESSON XV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of **amō** and its meanings. A. & G. 128; 118, for *personal endings*: A. & S. 213(3); 222: B. 101; 96: G. 122; 114, 1: H. 205; 247, 3, for *pers. endings*.

47. Use of the Imperative. A. & G. 269: A. & S. 527: B. 281: G. 266: H. 487.

VOCABULARY.

avus, -ī, m.

Divitiacus, -ī, m.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi,

mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī,

nātūra, -ae, f.

grandfather.

Divitiacus.

help, aid.

make haste, hasten.

nature.

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, | announce. |
| proellum, -ī, n. | battle. |
| socer, socerī, m. | father-in-law. |
| vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, | avoid, shun. |
| vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, | call. |

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. Iuvā,¹ mātūrā, nūntiā. 2. Iuvātō, mātūrātō, nūntiātō. 3. Iuvāte, mātūrāte, nūntiāte. 4. Vītā, Divitiace,² proelium. 5. Vītā, Ō ave,³ periculum. 6. Date, virī, Rōmānīs⁴ arma.⁵ 7. Vocā, socer, puerōs. 8. Mātūrā, Cassī,⁶ Titō⁴ nūntiāre. 9. Mātūrāte, virī, oppidum expūgnāre. 10. Vāstāte agrōs. 11. Vāstāte multōs agrōs. 12. Vāstāte tōtam prōvinciam.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger. 4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius. 6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius. 8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (28); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

² A. & S. 592: B. 350, 3: H. 569, VI.

³ Ō ave, O grandfather, or my grandfather.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See LX. VIII., VY.

⁶ See 18.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson? The Perfect Stem? Which Stem is used in the Imperative? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative?

LESSON XVI.

VERBS: INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of **amō**. A. & G. 118; 128, page 93; 289: A. & S. 214; 222, page 108: B. 95, 1, 2; 101, page 59: G. 112, 5; 122, page 73: H. 200, I.-IV.; 205; 248, ACTIVE.

49. Principal Parts (Stem Forms). A. & G. 122, b: A. & S. 220, NOTE: B. 99: G. 120, 2: H. 202; 203; 220, CONJ. I.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in **um** by dropping the **um**: e. g. **CURĀTUM** is a Supine in **um** and **CURĀT** its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (28), the Perfect (45), and the Supine (50). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.¹

| | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| amō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum,² | <i>love.</i> |
| cūrō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum,² | <i>care for.</i> |
| dō, | dare,³ | dedī, | datum,³ | <i>give.</i> |
| iuvō, | iuvāre, | iūvi, | iūtum, | <i>help, aid.</i> |
| negō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>deny.</i> |
| pugnō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>fight.</i> |
| vāstō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>lay waste, devastate.</i> |
| vēxō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>disturb, harass.</i> |
| vocō, | -āre, | -āvi, | -ātum, | <i>call.</i> |

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Principal Parts (49) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

² Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **amō**. To form the Principal Parts let **-āre, -āvi, -ātum** take the place of final **ō** in the Present Indicative Active: e. g. **cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvi, cūrātum**.

³ See LX. XIII., NOTE 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice? On which Stem is each formed? Name the Infinitives of **dō, cūrō, iuvō,** and **vāstō**.

What is the Ending of each Infinitive ? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed ? What is the Ending of each Participle ? What is the Future Active Participle of *dō*, *negō*, *pūgnō* ? What is the Present Participle of each ? On which Stem is the Gerund formed ? Form and decline the Gerund of *dō* and *cūrō*. What are the Endings of the Supine ?



LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272 : A. & S. 533 (1) : B. 331 : G. 527 : H. 534.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, f : A. & S. 530 : B. 184 : G. 203, REMARK 1 : H. 536.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Dicit Rōmānōs¹ oppidum² expūgnāre,³ he says (that⁴) the Romans⁴ are storming⁴ the town.*
2. *Dicit Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnāvisse, he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town ; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.*
3. *Dicit Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnātūrōs⁵ esse, he says (that) the Romans are about to storm the town ; or he says (that) the Romans will storm the town.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ See 53.

² See 34.

³ The whole expression *Rōmānōs oppidum expūgnāre* is the Direct Object of *dicit* (see 52).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive *expūgnāre* is translated by the Indicative *are storming* ; the Subject Accusative *Rōmānōs*, by the Subject Nominative *the Romans* ; and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Aedui, -ōrum, m. | <i>the Aedui.</i> |
| Ariovistus, -i, m. | <i>Ariovistus.</i> |
| dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,¹ | <i>show, declare.</i> |
| dīcit, | <i>he says.</i> |
| existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>think, suppose.</i> |
| negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>deny.</i> |
| nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>announce.</i> |
| putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>think.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

1. Dicit² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxāre.³ 2. Putat Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxāvisse. 3. Nūntiat Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vēxātūrōs esse. 4. Existimat Ariovistum rēgnum in Galliā occupātūrū esse. 5. Titus existimat Ariovistum rēgnum in Galliā occupāvisse. 6. Ariovistus nūntiat Germānōs agrum Helvētium vāstātūrōs esse. 7. Dicit Rōmānōs frūmentum importāre. 8. Existimat Helvētiōs frūmentum importātūrōs esse. 9. Dicit Gallōs frūmentum Rōmānīs⁴ datūrōs esse. 10. Dicit Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ arma datūrōs esse.

Write in Latin.

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the Helvetii. 2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this VOCABULARY may have as Object an Infinitive with its Subject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before attempting to translate the sentences.

³ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — *vēxāre* is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *vēxō, vēxāre, vēxāvī, vēxātum*; Stems, *VĒXĀ* (28), *VĒXĀV* (45), *VĒXĀT* (50); Infinitives of the Active Voice, *vēxāre, vēxāvisse, vēxātūrus esse*; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its Subject *Rōmānōs* is the Object of *dicit*; rule (see 52).

⁴ See 39.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the Examples, 4.



LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. 248, c, 1: A. & S. 407: B. 218: G. 401: H. 420.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>animus, -ī, m.</i> | <i>mind.</i> |
| <i>concellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>win, conciliate.</i> |
| <i>cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>establish, encourage.</i> |
| <i>inter, prep. w. acc.</i> | <i>between, among.</i> |
| <i>Norēia, -ae, f.</i> | <i>Noreia.</i> |
| <i>oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>attack, besiege, assault.</i> |
| <i>propter, prep. w. acc.</i> | <i>on account of.</i> |
| <i>Trēvirī, -ōrum, m.</i> | <i>the Treviri.</i> |
| <i>verbum, -ī, n.</i> | <i>word.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; analyze; ¹ parse.

1. Inter ² Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 2. Propter ² angustias. 3. Norēiam oppūgnāmus.³ 4. Norēiam oppūgnābant. 5. Rōmānī Norēiam oppūgnāvērunt.⁴ 6. Trēvirī Norēiam oppūgnābunt. 7. Dicit Trēvirōs ⁵ Norēiam oppūgnātūrōs ⁶ esse.⁷ 8. Norēiam oppūgnātis. 9. Norēiam oppūgnāte.⁸ 10. Divitiacus Gallōrum animōs verbīs ⁹ cōfirmāvit. 11. Divitiacus Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmābit. 12. Titus putat Divitiacum Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmātūrū esse. 13. Cassius

rēgnum conciliāvit. 14. Cassius rēgnum cōpiis conciliābat. 15. Cassius rēgnum cōpiis Divitiacō¹⁰ conciliābit. 16. Negat Cassium rēgnum cōpiis Divitiacō conciliātūrum esse. 17. Titus Divitiacō¹⁰ filiam in mātirimōnium¹¹ dedit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. XIII., NOTE 5.

³ *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — **oppūgnāmus** is a Transitive (26) Verb; Principal Parts (49), *oppūgnō, oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvī, oppūgnātum*; it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic vowel is *ā*; Stems, *oppūgnā, oppūgnāv, oppūgnāt*; Synopsis (LN. XIV., NOTE 1), *oppūgnō, oppūgnābam, oppūgnābō, oppūgnāvi, oppūgnāveram, oppūgnāverō*; conjugated, *oppūgnō, oppūgnās, oppūgnat, oppūgnāmus, oppūgnātis, oppūgnant*; it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (*nōs, we*) understood; rule (33).

⁴ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative? (43)⁵ See 53.⁶ See LN. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

⁷ See 52. In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated? See LN. XVII., Example 3.

⁸ See 47. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the Present Indicative?

⁹ **verbis**, with words, or by means of words; it is a modifier (38) of **cōnfirmāvit**.

¹⁰ See 39.¹¹ See 19.

LESSON XIX.

THE VERB SUM.

55. Learn the entire conjugation of **sum**. A. & G. 119: A. & S. 215: B. 100: G. 116: H. 204.

56. What is an Irregular Verb? A. & G. 137: A. & S. 239: B. 124: H. 289. What are the Stems of **sum**? What are the Personal Endings? What are the Principal Parts of **sum**? Where are the following forms made: **eram, est, fuērunt, sīmus, erunt, fuerant, estō, fulsem, fuerō**?

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

57. Stem and Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*: A. & S. 89; 90, *a, b*: B. 18; 19, 1-4: G. 17; 26, REMARK: H. 46-47, *including fine print*.

58. A. & G. 48, *a-d*; 49, *w. declension of cōsul, nōmen, honor, leō, frāter, virgō, corpus*: A. & S. 103, *a-f*; 104, *decl. of cōsul, leō, virgō, nōmen, pater*; 107, *honor*: B. 34; 35; 36: G. 35; 36; 39, B; 41-46: H. 55; 56; 57, *Case-Suffixes*; 60, *Paradigms*, 1, 3, 4.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, | <i>accuse, censure.</i> |
| Caesar, Caesaris, m. | <i>Caesar.</i> |
| cōsul, cōsulis, m. | <i>consul.</i> |
| citrā, prep. w. acc. | <i>this side of.</i> |
| flūmen, flūminis, n. | <i>river.</i> |
| frāter, frātris, m. | <i>brother.</i> |
| māter, mātris, f. | <i>mother.</i> |
| pater, patris, m. | <i>father.</i> |
| Sēquana, -ae, m. | <i>the Seine.</i> |
| soror, sorōris, f. | <i>sister.</i> |
| uxor, uxōris, f. | <i>wife.</i> |

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and Endings; parse the verbs.

1. \bar{A}^1 flūmine Rhodanō fugit. 2. \bar{E}^1 flūmine Rhodanō frātre^m portat. 3. Ad flūmen Sēquanam properat. 4. Prōvincia est citrā flūmen Rhēnum. 5. Caesar cōsul² Titum lēgātum² accūsāverat. 6. Negat Caesarem cōsule^m Titum lēgātum accūsāvisse. 7. Uxor patrem et mātrem et sorōrem amāvit. 8. Cōsul fuerat aeger. 9. Sēquani sōlī erunt liberī. 10. Dīcit Sēquanōs sōlōs futūrōs esse liberōs. 11. Caesar fuit cōsul. 12. Ariovistus nūntiat Caesarem cōsule^m fuisse.

Write in Latin.

1. He flees to the river Rhone. 2. The province of Aquitania was this side the river Seine. 3. Caesar has fought for supreme power. 4. He denies (that) Caesar has fought for supreme power. 5. Caesar the consul was a friend of Cassius. 6. The father and mother and brother were sick.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. IV., VY., and LN. VIII., NOTE 4.

² See 25.

How is the Stem of a noun found? What are the Case-Endings of the Third Declension? Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit? How does the Stem of *fluminis* differ in form from the Nominative Singular?



LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. 21; 32, *a, b*; 33, *a-g*; 44; 45, *a-c*; 46: A. & S. 55; 101, *a, c*; 102; 104, decl. of *caput*: B. 18; 19; 30-33: G. 35, 2; 36, 2; 50; 51, 3; 52, 2; 53, declension of *aetās*; 55: H. 24, 1; 30; 36, 2; all of 56-59.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| atque ¹ or <i>ac</i> , ¹ conj. | <i>and</i> . |
| caput, capitis, n. | <i>head</i> . |
| custōs, custōdis, m. | <i>guard</i> . |
| Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m. | <i>Dumnorix</i> . |
| extrēmus, -a, -um, | <i>furthermost</i> . |
| imperātor, imperātōris, m. | <i>commander-in-chief, general</i> . |
| mīles, militis, m. | <i>soldier</i> . |
| mulier, mulieris, f. | <i>woman</i> . |
| obses, obsidis, m. and f. | <i>hostage</i> . |
| prīnceps, prīncipis, m. | <i>chief</i> . |
| rēx, rēgis, m. | <i>king</i> . |

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ariovistus erat princeps Germānōrum. 2. Rēgī² prōvinciam dat. 3. Cum Dumnorige frātre³ Divitiaci pūgnābant. 4. Pūgnāvēruntne militēs? Militēs pūgnāvērunt. 5. Extrēmum oppidum prōvinciae erat citrā flūmen. 6. Imperātor dē imperiō pūgnābat. 7. Custōdēs servōrum sunt militēs bonī. 8. Iūlia erat mulier bona. 9. Caput rēgis erit in periculō. 10. Cassius cum princepe tōtius Galliae pūgnābit. 11. Imperātor cum militibus in Etrūriam⁴ properat.

Notes.

¹ *atque* is used before vowels and consonants; *et*, only before consonants.

² Indirect object, (39).

³ See 25.

⁴ Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.



LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

60. *Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.* A. & G. 239, 1: A. & S. 394 (1): B. 177: G. 340: H. 373.

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesarem cōsulem creāvērunt, *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. Oppidum appellant Genāvam, *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m. | <i>the Allobroges.</i> |
| appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, | <i>name, call.</i> |
| creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, | <i>elect, appoint.</i> |
| lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, f. | <i>embassy.</i> |
| lēx, lēgis, f. | <i>law.</i> |

| | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| pāx, pācis, f. | peace. |
| proximus, -a, -um, | nearest. |
| senātor, senātōris, m. | senator. |
| suus, -a, -um, | his, their. |
| virtūs, virtūtis, f. | valor, virtue. |

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ parse.

1. Populus Caesarem² cōnsulem² creāvit. 2. Ancum Marcium rēgem populus creāvit. 3. Nūntiat Ancum Marcium rēgem populum³ creāvisse.⁴ 4. Populus Rōmānus senātōrēs patrēs appellant. 5. Allobrogēs suum⁵ oppidum Genāvam appellāvērunt. 6. Dumnorix, frāter⁶ Divitiaci,⁷ rēgnum occupāvit. 7. Helvētīi cum proximīs principibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmant. 8. Caesar oppidum virtūte⁸ militum suōrum⁵ expūgnāvit. 9. Lēgatiōnis principem Dumnorigem creāvērunt. 10. Belgae et Galli linguā⁹ et lēgibus⁹ differunt (*differ*).

Write in Latin.

1. The chief gives laws to the people. 2. Did the Romans elect the man consul? 3. The Romans elected the man consul. 4. They call the town Geneva. 5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 6. He says the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief. 7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power. 8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor. 9. Dumnorix was chief of the Aedui.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.

² See 60 and Examples.

³ See 53.

⁴ See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

⁵ When *suus* refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to **Allobrogēs**, render it *their*: when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 8 it refers to **Caesar**, render it *his, her, or its*. It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See 25.

⁷ See 40.

⁸ See 54.

⁹ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. Review 44-49, including all Paradigms under these references: A. & S. 105; 106, a, b, d, e; 107, and the declensions already learned: B. 28; 36, including all the Paradigms: G. 47-49: H. All of 61.

62. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, a-c: A. & S. 118: B. 43: G. 39; 43; 46; 49; 58, 1, 2: H. 99; 105; 111!

VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|---------|--------------|---------------------|
| corpus, | corporis, n. | body. |
| crūs, | crūris, n. | leg. |
| flōs, | flōris, m. | flower. |
| frigus, | frigoris, n. | cold, frost. |
| fūnus, | fūneris, n. | funeral procession. |
| genus, | generis, n. | kind. |
| iūs, | iūris, n. | right, law. |
| mōs, | mōris, m. | custom, manner. |
| onus, | oneris, n. | load, burden. |
| opus, | operis, n. | work. |
| scelus, | sceleris, n. | crime, guilt. |
| tempus, | temporis, n. | time. |
| volnus, | volneris, n. | wound. |

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.¹

1. Iūs² bellī; iūra populī Rōmānī. 2. Genus proelī;³ multa genera fūnerum. 3. Tempore⁴ patrum; tempora et mōrēs. 4. Volnera militum. 5. Flōrēs pulchrī.⁵ 6. Propter frīgora. 7. In⁶ reliquum tempus. 8. Mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī. 9. Militēs multa volne accēpērunt (*have received*). 10. Scelera virōrum sunt multa. 11. Crūra equī sunt māgna. 12. Corpus viri est parvum. 13. Genera flōrum sunt multa. 14. Nūl-

lum⁷ onus aliud. 15. Nūlla onera alia. 16. Onera multa et māgna. 17. Facta⁹ mala⁸ scelera⁹ appellāmus. 18. Rēx iūra et mōrēs virīs¹⁰ dabat.¹¹ 19. Multa genera frūmentī importābimus. 20. Dīcit Rōmānōs multa genera frūmentī importāre.¹²

Notes and Questions.

¹ All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce ; translate," is given or not.

² Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form ? What is the Plural Ending of these cases ?

³ See 17.

⁴ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁵ What is the stem of *pulchri* ? (23)

⁶ in, *fo*

⁷ Name the adjectives with Genitive in *-ius* and Dative in *-i*. (24)

⁸ *mala* modifies *facta*.

⁹ See 60.

¹⁰ See 39.

¹¹ What does the Imperfect Tense denote ? (36)

¹² See LN. XVII.



LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

63. A. & G. 51, *c* ; 52 ; 53, *a-c* ; 54 ; 55, *a-e* : A. & S. 108, *a, b* ; 109, *a* : B. 37 ; 38, 2, 3 ; 39 ; 40, 1, *a-e* : G. 56-58 : H. 62, 1, 2 ; 63, 1 ; 64, 1 ; 65, 1-3.

VOCABULARY.

animal, animālis, n.

animal.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

burn.

finis, finis, m.

limit ; pl. territory.

Garumna, -ae, f.

the Garonne (a river of Gaul):

ignis, ignis, m.

fire.

Iūra, -ae, m.

the Jura (a mountain range).

mare, maris, n.

sea.

mōns, mōntis, m.

mountain.

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| nāvis, nāvis, f. | ship. |
| Pars, partis, f. | part. |
| Pōns, pōntis, m. | bridge. |
| Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, | Pyrenean. |
| que, ¹ conj. | and. |
| rādix, rādīcis, f. | root, foot. |
| terra, -ae, f. | earth. |
| urbs, urbis, f. | city. |

¹ que is appended to the second of the connected words : e. g. terrā marique. A word thus appended is called an *enclitic*. It throws the accent on the syllable immediately preceding it. Pronounce, *marique* not *márique*.

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. Genera animālium multa sunt. 2. Rōmānī terrā marique¹ pūgnābunt. 3. Virōs ignī² cremant. 4. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum³ Rhodanus fluit (*flows*). 5. Helvētiī per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās⁴ copiās trādūxerant (*had led across*). 6. Mōns Iūra finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit (*separates*). 7. Ex oppidō Genāvā pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet (*extends*). 8. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs mōntēs pertinet. 9. Pars Sēquanōrum ad rādīcēs mōntis fugit (*flees*). 10. Rōmānī suam⁴ urbem Rōmam appellāvērunt. 11. Nāvēs multae et māgnae in marī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The Rhine flows through the territory of the Germans. 2. Many animals are in the mountains. 3. Men will burn the town with fire. 4. He says (that) men will burn the town with fire. 5. We fight on land and sea. 6. The river flows from the mountains into the sea. 7. The province of Aquitania extends to the mountains.

Notes and Questions

¹ A. & G. 156, a : A. & S. 562 (2) : B. 341, 2, a : G. 475 ; 476 ; 477 : H. 554, I., 2.

² See 54.

³ What does *Allobrogum* modify ?

⁴ See LN. XXII., NOTE 5.



LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. 176, a, b ; 183 ; 185 ; 186, b : A. & S. 327-329 ; 334 : B. 167 ; 168 ; 233, 1, 2 ; 234 : G. 211 : H. 362 ; 438, 2.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m. | <i>the Saône, pronounced Sône.</i> |
| Divicō, ōnis, m. | <i>Divico.</i> |
| civitās, civitātis, f. | <i>state.</i> |
| collis, collis, m. | <i>hill.</i> |
| dux, ducis, m. and f. | <i>leader, guide.</i> |
| homō, ¹ hominis, m. and f. | <i>man.</i> |
| hostis, hostis, m. and f. | <i>enemy.</i> |
| legiō, legiōnis, f. | <i>legion.</i> |
| mors, mortis, f. | <i>death.</i> |
| nōn, adv. | <i>not.</i> |
| nūbes, nūbis, f. | <i>cloud.</i> |
| potestās, potestātis, f. | <i>power.</i> |
| post, prep. w. acc. | <i>after.</i> |
| rūpēs, rūpis, f. | <i>rock, cliff.</i> |
| testis, testis, m. and f. | <i>witness.</i> |
| turris, turris, f. | <i>tower.</i> |

Pronounce ; translate ; analyze ; parse.

1. Oppidum est māgnū.²
2. Hominēs fuērunt aegrī.
3. Putat suam sorōrem esse pulchram.³
4. Sēquanī sōlī

erant liberī. 5. Rūpēs in⁴ colle est māgna. 6. Nūbēs erant circum turrim. 7. Post mortem imperātōris milītēs nōn pūgnābunt. 8. In potestāte hostium sumus. 9. Divicō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 10. Viri multī et bonī sunt in cīvitāte. 11. Divicō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 12. Lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit. 13. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. 14. Pōpulus⁵ Rōmānus est testis. 15. Erat in Galliā legiō ūna. 16. Pars citrā flūmen Ararim⁶ reliqua est. 17. Flūmen⁷ est Arar quod (*which*) per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit (*flows*). 18. Mōns Iūra⁸ est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 19. Propter frigora frūmenta⁹ in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 20. Aedui Sēquanīs¹⁰ obsidēs dedērunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *homō* means a *human being*, man or woman; *vir* means *man*, *hero*, never woman.

² *oppidum est māgnū* may be rendered *the town is large*; *it is a large town*; or *there is a large town*: the word *there* as used in the last rendering has no equivalent in Latin.

³ See LN. XVII. and Examples.

⁴ *in, on.*

⁵ *populus* takes a *Singular verb*; *people*, its English equivalent, usually takes a *Plural verb*.

⁶ What is the rule of gender for *Arar*? (6)

⁷ See 64.

⁸ See 25.

⁹ Translate *frūmenta* as if it were Singular.

¹⁰ See 39.



LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. 265, a, b: A. & S. 472; 476 (2): B. 272: G. 255, REMARK; 256, 1, 2: H. 196, II., 1-4.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Si Liscus sit dux**, if *Liscus* SHOULD BE leader ; or, if *Liscus* BE leader.
2. **Si Liscus esset dux**, if *Liscus* WERE leader.
3. **Si Liscus fuerit dux**, if *Liscus* SHOULD HAVE BEEN leader ; or, if *Liscus* SHOULD BE leader.
4. **Si Liscus fuisset dux**, if *Liscus* HAD BEEN leader.
5. **Simus ducēs**, LET US BE leaders.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| cupiditās, -ātis, f. | <i>desire.</i> |
| Liscus, -ī, m. | <i>Liscus.</i> |
| multitūdō, -inis, f. | <i>multitude.</i> |
| ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. | <i>speech, oration.</i> |
| sī, conj. | <i>if.</i> |
| vēctīgāl, -ālīs, n. | <i>tax, revenue.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each Subjunctive ; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Si² Caesar sit³ cōsul.⁴
2. Si Caesar esset cōsul.
3. Si Caesar fuerit cōsul.
4. Si Caesar fuisset cōsul.
5. Simus cōsulēs.
6. Si frumentum esset mātūrum.
7. Si propter frigora frumentum in agrīs sit nōn⁵ mātūrum.
8. Si vēctīgālia fuissent mājna.
9. Si vēctīgālia essent parva.
10. Si Divicō princeps lēgātiōnis fuisset.
11. Si nōn⁵ bonus sīs.
12. Si ōrātiōnēs Caesaris fuissent multae.
13. Si multitūdō militum sit mājna.
14. Si cupiditās rēgnī esset mājna.
15. Si rēx fuissēs.
16. Militēs sīmus.
17. Si miles essem.
18. Si sīs imperātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king.
2. If Ariovistus were king.
3. If Ariovistus had been king.
4. Let us be kings.
5. Let us be good.
6. If the mountain were large.
7. If the boys had been bad.
8. If we were not

free. 9. If the furthest town had been Geneva.
 10. If the corn had not been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus
 were leader of the Helvetii. 12. If the danger had been
 great.

Notes.

¹ For the Synopsis of the Subjunctive, give the First Person Singular of each tense: e. g. *sim, essem, fuerim, fuisset*.

² *si* is a conditional conjunction; the sentence which it introduces is a conditional sentence.

³ Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ A. & G. 207: A. & S. 74 (5): G. 439, 1, 2: H. 551. What does *nōn* modify



LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF *SUM*.—DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. *Compounds of sum*. A. & G. 137, a: A. & S. 215, d: B. 125; 126: G. 117; 118: H. 289; 290, I., III.

67. *Dative with Compounds*. A. & G. 228: A. & S. 377 (1): B. 187, III.: G. 347: H. 386.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pauci*¹ *superfuērunt*, *few survived*.
2. *Dux suis militibus* (67) *aderat*, *the leader WAS ASSISTING his soldiers*.
3. *Caesar prōvinciae* (67) *praefuit*, *Caesar RULED OVER the province*.
4. *Si Liscus multis*¹ *prōdesset*, *if Liscus WERE USEFUL to many*.
5. *Si cōsiliū dēfuisset*, *if counsel HAD BEEN WANTING*.
6. *Titus legiōni* (67) *praeerat*, *Titus WAS IN COMMAND OF the legion*.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------|------------|----------------------------------------------|
| ab-sum, | ab-esse, | ab-fui, | <i>be away, be absent, be distant.</i> |
| ad-sum, | ad-esse, | ad-fui, | <i>be present, assist.</i> |
| dē-sum, | de-esse, | dē-fui, | <i>be wanting.</i> |
| hūmānitās, -ātis, f. | | | <i>refinement, humanity.</i> |
| longissimē, adv. | | | <i>very far.</i> |
| paucī, ¹ -ae, -a, | | | <i>few.</i> |
| prae-sum, | prae-esse, | prae-fui, | <i>be over, rule over, be in command of.</i> |
| prō-sum, | prōd-esse, | prō-fui, | <i>be for, be useful.</i> |
| super-sum, | super-esse, | super-fui, | <i>be over, survive.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multī¹ superfuērunt. 2. Multī² supersumus. 3. Paucī supererimus. 4. Caesar suis militibus³ aderit. 5. Sī Caesar suis militibus nōn adsit.⁴ 6. Cōsul urbī praeerat. 7. Labiēnus oppidō⁵ Genāvae⁶ praeerit. 8. Cōsul legiōnī praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis¹ prōfuisset. 10. Multis prōsimus.⁷ 11. Nōn deest cōsiliū. 12. Cōsulēs⁸ dēsumus. 13. Belgae ā hūmānitāte prōvinciae⁹ longissimē¹⁰ absunt. 14. Sī deus¹¹ adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many¹ will survive. 2. Few² (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let⁷ us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were¹² in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls⁸ had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

² *multi* modifies *nōs* (*we*), the omitted subject of *supersumus*; render, *many of us survive*.

³ See 67 and Example 2; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁴ See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 1.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ See 25.

See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 5.

⁸ *cōsulēs* is an appositive to *nōs* (*we*), the omitted subject of *dēsumus*.

⁹ See 40.

¹⁰ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

¹¹ See 20.

¹² See LN. XXVI., EXAMPLE 2.



LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possum. A. & G. 137, b: A. & S. 216: B. 126: G. 119: H. 290, II., including fine print.

69. Infinitive without Subject Accusative. A. & G. 271: A. & S. 532: B. 327, 1: G. 423: H. 533.

EXAMPLES.

- Militēs pugnāre (69) possunt**, the soldiers ARE ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers CAN fight.
- Militēs pugnāre poterant**, the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers COULD fight.
- Militēs pugnāre poterunt**, the soldiers WILL BE ABLE to fight.
- Militēs pugnāre potuerunt**, the soldiers HAVE BEEN ABLE to fight;
or the soldiers COULD HAVE fought.
- Sī militēs pugnāre possint**, if the soldiers SHOULD BE ABLE to fight.
- Sī militēs pugnāre possent**, if the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.
- Sī militēs pugnāre potuissent**, if the soldiers HAD BEEN ABLE to fight.
- Dicit militēs (53) pugnāre (69) potuisse (52)**, he says that the soldiers WERE ABLE to fight.

Conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of each form of **POSSUM**; parse the Infinitives.²

1. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potest.³ 2. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre poterat. 3. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre poterit. 4. Cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potuit. 5. Dīcit cōsulem⁴ oppidum expūgnāre potuisse.⁵ 6. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre possit. 7. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre posset. 8. Sī cōsul oppidum expūgnāre potuisset. 9. Populus Rōmānus Cassium⁶ cōsulem⁶ creāre nōn poterit. 10. Titō⁷ filiam meam (*my*) in mātirimōnium dare nōn possum. 11. Cōsulī⁸ adesse poteris. 12. Mili-tēs agrōs hostium vāstāre poterunt. 13. Amīcīs prōdesse possumus. 14. Nēmō (*no one*) sine virtūte bonus esse potest.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1; and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

³ Observe carefully how each tense of **possum** is translated in the EXAM-
PLES. What two words unite to form **possum**? Which part of **potis** is
used? What does the final **t** become before **s**? What becomes of **f** in the
Perfect Tenses?

⁴ See 53.

⁵ See 52.

⁶ See 60.

⁷ See 39.

⁸ See 67.



LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **AMŌ**.

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of amō. A. & G. 118, ACTIVE VOICE, for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive; 128: A. & S. 213 (1); 222; 224, 4, b: B. 96; 101: G. 122: H. 205; 243; 245.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī urbem occupēmus, if we SHOULD OCCUPY the city.*
2. *Sī urbem occupārēmus, if we OCCUPIED the city; or if we WERE OCCUPYING the city.*
3. *Sī urbem occupāverimus, if we SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED the city; (or if we SHOULD OCCUPY the city.)*
4. *Sī urbem occupāvissēmus, if we HAD OCCUPIED the city.*
5. *Ut¹ urbem occupēmus, that we MAY OCCUPY the city.*
6. *Ut urbem occupārēmus, that we MIGHT OCCUPY the city.*
7. *Urbem occupēmus, LET US OCCUPY the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Sī Sēquanī Helvētiōs iuvent.²*
2. *Sī Rōmānī Germānōs iuvārent.*
3. *Sī rēx Helvētiōs iūverit.*
4. *Sī Aquītānī Sēquanōs iūvissent.*
5. *Ut¹ cōsul Helvētiōs iuvet.*
6. *Ut pater suōs filiōs iuvāret.*
7. *Allobrogēs iuvēmus.*
8. *Puerōs vocēmus.*
9. *Concilium Gallōrum convocēmus.*
10. *Sī Caesarī³ filiam suam in mātrimonium det.*
11. *Sī cum proximīs cīvitātibus⁴ pācem et amīcitiām cōfirmēs.*
12. *Ut milītēs circum Rōmam hie-mārent.*
13. *Ut populus Ariovistum⁵ rēgem⁵ creāret.*
14. *Ut cōsul oppidum Genāvam⁶ occupāret.*
15. *Ut milītēs Rōmānī agrōs Gallōrum vāstent.*
16. *Ut suis cōpiīs⁷ rēgna conciliāret.*

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends.
2. If we loved (our) friends.
3. If we had loved (our) friends.
4. That we may harass the enemy.
5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends.
7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn.
9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man⁵ senator.⁵

Notes and Questions.

¹ *ut* in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that.*

² Imitate the Examples in translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (65). Define the Indicative Mood (36). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of *iuvō*.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 16. Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See 60.

⁶ See 28.

⁷ *suis cōpiis, with his troops.* See 54.



LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMŌ. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of *amō*.

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, c, REM.: A. & S. 394 (2):
B. 178, 1: G. 339: H. 374.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Caesarem sententiam rogāvit, he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitāvit, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. *Rēx populum sermōnem cōlāvit, the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>cēlō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>conceal.</i> |
| <i>com-meō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>go back and forth.</i> |
| <i>ex-spectō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>await, expect.</i> |
| <i>flāgitō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>demand.</i> |
| <i>graviter,</i> | <i>adv.</i> | <i>severely.</i> |
| <i>mercātor,</i> | <i>-ōris, m.</i> | <i>trader, merchant.</i> |
| <i>minimē,</i> | <i>adv.</i> | <i>least, by no means.</i> |
| <i>rogō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>ask.</i> |
| <i>saepe,</i> | <i>adv.</i> | <i>often.</i> |
| <i>sententia,</i> | <i>-ae, f.</i> | <i>opinion.</i> |
| <i>sermō,</i> | <i>-ōnis, m.</i> | <i>discourse, conversation.</i> |
| <i>volnerō,</i> | <i>-āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>wound.</i> |

Analyze¹ and parse.

1. Labiēnus militēs³ suōs² exspectābat.⁴ 2. Galli mercātōrēs exspectāvēre.⁵ 3. Titus nūntiat Gallōs mercātōrēs exspectāvisse.⁶ 4. Militēs Sēquanōs graviter volnerāvērunt. 5. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāt. 6. Dicit Caesarem principēs Aeduōrum graviter accūsāre. 7. Mercātōrēs ad⁷ Belgās commeant.⁷ 8. Mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant. 9. Minimē⁸ ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant. 10. Commeāte,⁹ mercātōrēs, ad Belgās. 11. Cōsul Germānōs cōpiās flāgitābit. 12. Cōsul Gallōs frūmentum flāgitat. 13. Sī cōsul Aeduōs cōpiās flāgitet. 14. Caesar cōsulem sententiam rogābit. 15. Dicit Caesarem cōsulem sententiam rogātūrum esse. 16. Titum sermōnem nōn cēlābō. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem sermōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitēmus.¹⁰

Notes and Questions.¹ See LN. XIII., NOTE 1.² See LN. VI., NOTE 1.³ See LN. IV., NOTE 1.⁴ See LN. XVIII., NOTE 3.⁵ What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ? (43)⁶ See LN. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and NOTE 3.⁷ *ad* — *commeant*, *go-back-and-forth to*, may be rendered *visit*.⁸ *minimē* modifies *saepe*.⁹ See 47.¹⁰ See LN. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found ? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action ? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voices ? Of the Imperative ? What are the Endings of the Infinitives ? Of the Participles ? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem ? Which of the Subjunctive ? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem ?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ**.

72. Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice. A. & G. 111; 116; 118: A. & S. 193; 213 (1): B. 96: G. 214; 114: H. 195, II.; 247, PERSON, PASS., MEANING.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of **amŏ**. A. & G. 129: A. & S. 223: B. 102: G. 122: H. 206.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses differ in form only in the Personal Endings: i. e. **amā-mus**, *we love*; **amā-mur**, *we ARE loved*: **amābi-tis**, *you will love*; **amābi-mini**, *you will BE loved*. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bi**, and in the Passive, **be**: e. g. **amā-bi-s**, *you will love*; **amā-be-ris** or **re**, *you will BE loved*. It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, | <i>name, call.</i> |
| Casticus, -i, m. | <i>Casticus.</i> |
| noster, nostra, nostrum, | <i>our.</i> |
| occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, | <i>hide, conceal.</i> |
| tantus, -a, -um, | <i>so great.</i> |

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;¹ parse the nouns.

1. Oppida expūgnābuntur.
2. Nostrī agrī vāstābuntur.
3. Homō ignī² cremābitur.
4. Concilium Gallōrum convocābātur.
5. Nostrā linguā³ Galli⁴ appellāntur.
6. Ariovistus rēx⁴ atque amīcus appellābātur.
7. Lūcius Cassius cōsul⁵ amīcus⁴ appellābitur.
8. Rēx⁴ appellāberis.
9. Divitiacus frāter⁵ Dumnorigis amīcus⁴ populī Rōmānī appellābātur.
10. Pater Casticī populī Rōmānī amīcus appellābātur.
11. In tantā multitudīne fuga occultātur.
12. Orātiōne⁶ Liscī Dumnorix Divitiaci

frāter dēsīgnātur. 13. Dumnorix ab Aeduīs⁶ accūsābātur. 14. A Caesare⁶ accūsābiminī.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

¹ See LN. X., NOTE 3, and LN. XII., NOTE 1.

² See 54.

³ See 54 and LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁴ See 64.

⁵ See 25.

⁶ With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent*, i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with a, ab*; *the instrument*, i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without a preposition*: e. g. *He is overcome BY THE SOLDIER, a milite superatur*; *he is overcome BY THE soldier's WEAPONS, talis militis superatur*.



LESSON XXXII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF AMŌ (continued).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of amō. A. & G. 118; 129; A. & S. 211; 214; 223; B. 102; G. 122; H. 206.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f.

citadel.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,

collect.

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,

divulge, report.

eques, -itis, m.

horseman, cavalryman.

praetor, -ōris, m.

praetor.

Conjugate and give a Synopsis¹ of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduīs² comportātum³ est. 2. Māgna cōpia frūmentī ab Aeduīs comportāta erat. 3. Obsidēs Helvētiīs⁴ datī⁵ erant. 4. Multi obsidēs Helvētiīs ā Sēquanīs datī erant. 5. Nullae⁶ arcēs expūgnātae⁷ sunt. 6. Nostra cōsilia hostibus⁸ ēnūntiāta⁹ sunt. 7. Nostra cōsilia hostibus ab Aeduīs ēnūntiāta erant. 8. Caesar ā Rōmānīs praetor¹⁰ creātus¹¹ est. 9. Praetōrēs¹² creātī erimus. 10. Nostri agrī vāstātī sunt. 11. Nostra oppida expūgnāta sunt. 12. Tanta multitudō equitum superāta¹³ est. 13. In tantā multitudīne equitum nostra fuga occultāta est. 14. Cōpiae Caesaris ab Germānīs ūnō proeliō¹⁴ superātae sunt. 15. Equitēs ā Caesare graviter¹⁵ accūsātī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected. 2. The citadels will have been stormed. 3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.² 4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls⁴ by the Germans. 5. Cassius had been elected praetor.⁶ 6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome. 7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.⁷ 8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans. 9. We have been severely⁸ censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XIV., NOTE 1.

² See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

³ Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (64), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number, and case*.

⁴ See 39.

⁵ See 24.

⁶ See 64. What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

⁷ ūnō proeliō, in a single battle. See 54.

⁸ See LN. XXVI., NOTE 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ** (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **amō**. A. & G. 116, b; 118; 129: A. & S. 223, page 114: B. 102: G. 122: H. 247, 3; 248; 206.

Conjugate the Imperatives; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsāre, accūsāminī.¹ 2. Accūsātor, accūsantor.
3. Iuvāre, iuvātor. 4. Vocāminī, vocantor. 5. Dīcit suum frātre^m creātum esse.² 6. Dīcit frātre^m Divitiaci dēsīgnātum esse. 7. Dīcit mōntem ā Labiēnō occupāri.
8. Negat³ nostrōs agrōs vāstātōs esse. 9. Negat cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem cōfirmātā esse. 10. Dīcit rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupātum esse. 11. Nūntiat Caesarem creātum esse cōsule^m. 12. Nūntiat Cassium praetōrem creātum esse. 13. Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānīs rēgem appellātum esse.

Notes and Questions.

¹ How is the Imperative used? (47)

² **creātum esse**, *has been elected, or was elected*. See LN. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

³ **negat**, *he says not; lit. he denies*: HE SAYS our fields have NOT been laid waste.

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed? Of the Indicative Passive? The Imperative Active and Passive? The Infinitives Active and Passive? The Participles Active and Passive?

How many Participles has a transitive verb? A. & G. 109, a: A. & S. 206: H. 200, IV., NOTE.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMŌ** (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of **amŏ**. A. & G. 129 : A. & S. 223 : B. 102 : G. 122 : H. 206.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sĭ homŏ cremĕtur**, *if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
2. **Sĭ homŏ cremārĕtur**, *if the man WERE BEING BURNED.*
3. **Sĭ homŏ cremātus sit**, *if the man SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED ; or if the man SHOULD BE BURNED.*
4. **Sĭ homŏ cremātus esset**, *if the man HAD BEEN BURNED ; or if the man WERE BURNED.*
5. **Sĭ sententiam rogĕtur**, *if HE SHOULD BE ASKED (his) opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. **Sĭ Caesar sententiam** ¹ **rogātus esset**. 2. **Sĭ sententiam rogātus sim**. 3. **Sĭ sententiam rogārĕris**. 4. **Sĭ cremātī essĕmus**. 5. **Sĭ Ariovistus rĕx** ² **creātus esset**. 6. **Sĭ mĭles volnerĕtur**. 7. **Sĭ nŏn volnerātus essĕs**. 8. **Sĭ Ariovistus amĭcus populī Rŏmānī appellārĕtur**. 9. **Sĭ obsidēs Rŏmānīs** ³ **ā Gallīs** ⁴ **nŏn dentur**. 10. **Sĭ obsidēs Germānīs ab Helvētiīs nŏn datī essent**. 11. **Sĭ cōpia frūmentī importĕtur**. 12. **Sĭ cōpia frūmentī nŏn importāta esset**. 13. **Sĭ Divitiacus ā populŏ Rŏmānŏ rĕx appellātus esset**. 14. **Sĭ rĕx atque amĭcus ab Helvētiīs appellārĕris**. 15. **Sĭ sententiam rogātī essĕmus**. 16. **Sĭ sententiam rogātī sītis**. 17. **Sĭ rĕgēs creātī essĕtis**. 18. **Sĭ cōsulēs creātī essĕmus**.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion. 2. If you were asked (your) opinion. 3. If you had been burned. 4. If Cassius had been elected consul. 5. If Cassius had not

been called a friend of the Gauls. 6. If hostages should be given to the Germans by the consul. 7. If the soldiers had not been wounded. 8. If we had not been wounded. 9. If an abundance of corn were being imported. 10. If you should be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 71.² See 64.³ See 39.

⁴ Which prepositions are used with the Ablative? (16) How is the *agent* of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin? (LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.) How is the *instrument* expressed? What is meant by the *agent*? By the *instrument*?



LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 195 : B. 112 : G. 220 : H. 195, II. 2.

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation. A. & G. page 106, *mīror* : A. & S. 223, *mīror* : B. 113, *mīror* : G. 128, *hortor* : H. 231 ; 232.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>cōnor</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, ¹ | <i>attempt, try.</i> |
| <i>glōrior</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>glory, boast.</i> |
| <i>hortor</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>exhort, urge.</i> |
| <i>laetor</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>rejoice, exult.</i> |
| <i>mīror</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>admire, wonder at.</i> |
| <i>moror</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>tarry, delay.</i> |
| <i>vagor</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>wander about.</i> |
| <i>populor</i> , | -ārī, | -ātus sum, | <i>ravage, lay waste.</i> |

¹ The *principal parts* of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative* ; e. g. *cōnor*, *cōnārī*, *cōnātus sum*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābimur. 2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus eram, glōriātus erō. 3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sīs, sī hortātus essēs. 5. Laetāre, laetāmīni, laetēmur.² 6. Dicit Caesarem laetātum esse. 7. Mirārī³ nōn possumus. 8. Vagārī³ cōnēmur.² 9. Vagārī nōn poterimus. 10. Caesar ad⁴ Rōmam morātus est. 11. Helvētīi agrōs Aeduōrum populābantur.

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried. 3. If he should tarry, if he tarried. 4. If he had tarried near Rome. 5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva. 6. They can⁵ not rejoice. 7. They could⁵ not rejoice. 8. Let us try² to rejoice.

Notes.

¹ A complete synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows: *Indicative*, cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus eram, cōnātus erō; *Subjunctive*, cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative*, cōnāre, cōnātor; *Infinitives*, cōnārī, cōnātus esse, cōnātūrus esse; *Participles*, cōnāns, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus; *Gerunds*, cōnāndī; *Supines*, cōnātum, cōnātū.

² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

³ See 69.

⁴ ad with the name of a town may often be rendered *near, in the vicinity of*.

⁵ Can and could in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able, were able*; translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of *possum*, and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. 245 : A. & S. 404 : B. 219 : G. 408 : H. 413 ; 416.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. 180, a-f : A. & S. 311-314, a : B. 164 ; 165 : G. 472, 1-4 : H. 348 ; 349.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Pueri equis*¹ (79) *laetantur*, boys rejoice in horses.
2. *Helvētīi suā victōriā*¹ (79) *glōriābantur*, the Helvetii were boasting because of their victory ; or the Helvetii were glorying in their victory.
3. *Orgetorix Casticum hortātur ut rēgnum occupet*,² Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.
4. *Miles nōn laetētur, sī volnerētur*,³ the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.
5. *Sī multī volnerātī essent, nōn laetātī essēmus*, if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.
6. *Arlovistus fuit rēx et Caesar fuit cōsul*,⁴ Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. *Imperātor militibus bonīs laetātur.* 2. *Rōmānī suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur.* 3. *Sēquanī victōriā suā nōn glōriābantur.* 4. *Negat*⁵ *Sēquanōs victōriā glōriātūrōs esse.* 5. *Militēs hortābimur ut agrōs populentur.* 6. *Imperātor militēs suōs hortātus est*⁶ *ut agrōs Gallōrum populentur.* 7. *Dumnorigem hortābor ut rēgnum in*⁷ *suā cīvitate occupet.* 8. *Sī ignī*⁸ *cremer, nōn laetēris.* 9. *Sī Cassius praetor*⁹ *creātus esset, laetātus essem.* 10. *Sī Caesar sermōnem*¹⁰ *militēs*¹⁰ *cēlet, laeter.* 11. *Sī dux*

* NOTE TO TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 171 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

militibus¹¹ adesse¹² possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur¹³ Helvētiōs ut cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmēt. 13. Si Caesar multōs obsidēs dedisset hostibus,¹⁴ hostēs laetātī essent. 14. Puer erat malus et puella erat bōna. 15. Cōnsul abest et praetor est aeger.⁹

Notes.

¹ In Examples 1 and 2 *equis* and *victōriā* are the cause of the rejoicing and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative, in accordance with the rule referred to in 79.

² Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal clause*, *Orgetorix Casticum hortātur*, and a *subordinate clause*, *ut rēgnū occupet*. Observe that *ut occupet* is rendered by the Infinitive *to seize*; lit. *that he may seize*.

³ Example 4 is a *complex sentence*; *principal clause*, *miles nōn laetētur*; *subordinate clause*, *si vulnerētur*; *si* and *ut* are *subordinate conjunctions*; hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

⁴ Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate clauses*; and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions*.

⁵ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ *hortatus est, has urged.*

⁷ See LN. XIII., NOTE 5. Which is this?

⁸ See 54.

¹² See 69.

⁹ See 64.

¹³ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See 71.

¹⁴ See 39.

¹¹ See 67.



LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, *levis*, ācer, *h*, *Case-Forms*: A. & S. 148-150; 152; 155 (1), (2): B. 68, ācer; 69, *fortis*: G. 77; 78: H. 152; 153; 154, *tristis*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| alacer, ¹ -cris, -cre, | <i>lively, eager.</i> |
| brevis, ² -e, | <i>short, brief.</i> |
| celer, ¹ celeris, celere, | <i>swift.</i> |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| difficilis, ² -e, | <i>difficult, impracticable.</i> |
| equester, ¹ -tris, -tre, | <i>of cavalry.</i> |
| facilis, ² -e, | <i>easy, practicable.</i> |
| familia, -ae, f. | <i>household, family.</i> |
| fortis, ² -e, | <i>brave, courageous, strong.</i> |
| iter, itineris, n. | <i>journey, route, march.</i> |
| iudicium, -ī, n. | <i>trial.</i> |
| omnis, ² -e, | <i>all, every.</i> |
| tristis, ² -e, | <i>sad.</i> |

¹ Declined like *acer*.

² Declined like *levis, mitis, facilis, tristis*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī¹ Galliā. 2. Cum omnibus cōpiis. 3. Per omnēs urbēs. 4. Per tōtam² urbem. 5. Equī sunt celerēs.³ 6. Negat⁴ equōs esse celerēs. 7. Si equitēs fuissent celerēs, rēx laetātus esset.⁵ 8. Tempus est breve. 9. Helvētiī oppida sua omnia incendunt (*burn*). 10. Fuit proelium equestre. 11. Dicit futūrum esse proelium equestre. 12. Sēquanī fuērunt tristēs. 13. Iter¹¹ erat difficile. 14. Si iter sit facile, laeter.⁶ 15. Putō iter esse facile. 16. Titus Labiēnus lēgātus⁷ suōs militēs hortātur ut⁸ fortēs sint.⁸ 17. Orgētorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam cōēgit (*brought*). 18. Orgētorix Helvētiōs hortātus est¹² ut⁹ dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent.⁹ 19. Virīs¹⁰ fortibus laetor.

Notes.

¹ See LN. VI., NOTE 1.

² See 24.

³ See 64.

⁴ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁶ See LN. XXVI., Ex. 1 and LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁷ See 25.

⁸ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁹ ut — exirent, to go out.

¹⁰ See 79.

¹¹ See A. & G. 60, c: A. & S. 110 (4): B. 42, 1: G. 44, 5.

¹² hortātus est: urged.

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

82. A. & G. 85, *a, b*; 87, *a, c*: A. & S. 154; 155 (3): B. 70,
except *plūs*, 1, 3: G. 82; 83, REMARK: H. *all of 155-158*.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>audāx, -ācis,</i> | <i>bold, audacious.</i> |
| <i>conditiō, -ōnis, f.</i> | <i>condition.</i> |
| <i>contumēlia, -ae, f.</i> | <i>insult.</i> |
| <i>dīves, -itis,</i> | <i>rich.</i> |
| <i>fēlix, -icis,</i> | <i>happy.</i> |
| <i>flēns, -entis,</i> | <i>weeping.</i> |
| <i>implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>beseech, implore.</i> |
| <i>iniūria, -ae, f.</i> | <i>injury.</i> |
| <i>muller, -eris, f.</i> | <i>woman.</i> |
| <i>oriēns, -entis,</i> | <i>rising.</i> |
| <i>pār, paris,</i> | <i>equal.</i> |
| <i>prīnceps, -ipis,</i> | <i>first, chief.</i> |
| <i>recēns, -entis,</i> | <i>recent.</i> |
| <i>sōl, sōlis, m.</i> | <i>sun.</i> |
| <i>spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</i> | <i>look, front.</i> |
| <i>vetus, -eris,</i> | <i>old, ancient.</i> |

Analyze and parse.

1. Veterēs causae. 2. Vetus urbs¹ est Rōma. 3. Memoria veteris contumēliae. 4. In parem condiciōnem servitūtis. 5. Recentium iniūriarum memoria. 6. Mulierēs erant fēlicēs. 7. Mulierēs flentēs Caesarem implōrābant. 8. Helvētīi flentēs pācem petiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmur² militēs ut³ alacrēs et audācēs sint.³ 10. Belgae spectant in⁴ orientem sōlem.⁵ 11. Lēgatiōnis prīncipem⁶ locum⁷ obtinēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī divitēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn parēs sunt nostrīs militibus.⁸

Write in Latin.

1. There⁹ will be a battle of cavalry. 2. Our soldiers are brave. 3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave. 4. Geneva is an old town. 5. All¹⁰ are not happy. 6. Our leaders will be bold. 7. All cannot be¹¹ rich. 8. Weeping women will implore the consul. 9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalrymen.

Notes.

¹ See 64.² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge*? ANSW. By the Present Infinitive. See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁴ *in, towards.*⁵ See H. 60.⁶ *principem* is here used as an adjective; it is often a noun.⁷ How is *locus* declined in the Plural? See VY., LN. VIII.⁸ *militibus* is a *Dative*.⁹ See LN. XXV., NOTE 2, *last part*.¹⁰ *omnēs*, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.¹¹ *cannot be, esse nō possunt.*

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. 89, a: A. & S. 163-166: B. 71, 1-3: G. 86; 87, 1: H. 160-162; 163, 1.

84. *Declension of Comparatives.* A. & G. 86, a: A. & S. 152, *mīlior*: B. 69, *fortior*: G. 89: H. 154, *trīstior*, NOTE 1.

VOCABULARY.

*altus, -a, -um,**high, deep.**fōrtūna, -ae, f.**fortune.**gravis, -e,**heavy, grievous.**lātus, -a, -um,**broad, wide.*

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| longē, adv. | by far. |
| miser, misera, miserum, | wretched, pitiable. |
| nōbills, -e, | well-known, noble. |
| potēns, -entis, | powerful. |
| quam, adv. | than. |
| ūtilis, -e, | useful. |

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Iūra est mōns¹ altissimus.² 2. Caesar dicit Iūram esse mōntem altissimum. 3. Rhēnus est flūmen lātissimum et altissimum. 4. Homini³ nōbilissimō ac⁶ potentissimō aderam. 5. Omnium⁴ fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus¹⁰ fuit Orgētorix. 7. Per trēs (*three*) potentissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae. 8. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 9. Mīlitēs hortēmur ut fortiōrēs sint.⁵ 10. Si tempus fuisset brevius, nōn laetātus essem. 11. Mīlitēs fuērunt Caesarī ūtilissimī. 12. Dicit esse miseriōrem graviōremque⁷ fortūnam⁸ Sēquanōrum quam⁹ reliquōrum Gallōrum.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

¹ What is the gender of mōns? Of Iūra?

² *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. mōns altissimus, a very high mountain. They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

³ 67.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁴ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁶ See LN. XXI., NOTE 1.

⁷ What is the difference in force of *et*, *que*, and *atque*? See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIV., NOTE on *que*.

⁸ *fortūnam* is subject of *esse*.

⁹ When *quam* signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. *quam Rōmānōrum*, *than THAT of the Romans*.

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under *dives* and *dis*.



LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. 89, *b-e*; 90; 91, *a, b*: A. & S. 167-170 (1), (2); 173: B. 71, 2, 4; 72; 73, 1, 2; 74, 2: G. 87, 3, 4, 6-8: H. 163, 2, 3; 165; 166; 169, 1, 2; 170.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| Alpēs, -ium, f. | <i>the Alps.</i> |
| citerior, citerius, | <i>hither.</i> |
| extrā, prep. w. acc. | <i>without, beyond.</i> |
| inferior, inferius, | <i>lower.</i> |
| primus, a, um, | <i>first.</i> |
| Segūsiānī, -ōrum, m. | <i>the Segusiani.</i> |
| Sēquanus, -a, -um, | <i>of the Sequani.</i> |
| superior, superius, | <i>higher, upper.</i> |
| ūterior, ūterius, | <i>farther.</i> |

Translate and parse.

1. Maior¹ multitudō Germānōrum² Rhēnum trānsībat (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² māximus numerus. 3. Cum māximō militum² numerō. 4. Belgae pertinent (*extend*) ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. 5. Galli loca superiōra occupant. 6. Labiēnus summum mōntem³ occupāvit. 7. Summus mōns ā Labiēnō⁴ occupātus est. 8. Negat summum mōntem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse.

9. Militēs hortābimur ut summum mōntem occupent.
 10. Sī Labiēnus summum mōntem occupet, Caesar sit⁵
 fēlicissimus. 11. Iter per prōvinciam est facilius.⁶
 12. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus⁷ tōtius Galliae.
 13. Caesar in Galliam ūteriōrem per Alpēs contendit
 (*hastens*). 14. Citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum.
 15. Segūsiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses. 2. A larger number of cavalrymen. 3. To the upper part of the Rhone.
 4. The soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain.
 5. The top of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers.
 6. The route through our province is most practicable.
 7. I think (that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practicable.
 8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

¹ In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be compared.

² Notice the different positions of the Genitive; what is the difference in force? See LN. III., NOTE 3.

³ *summum mōntem, the top of the mountain.*

⁴ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ *sit, would be.*

⁶ Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like *facilis*.

⁷ *optimus, sc. ager.*

 LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

86. Dative with Adjectives. A. & G. 234, a : A. & S. 388 ;
 389 : B. 192, 1, 2 : G. 359 : H. 391, I.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Belgae sunt proximī Germānis, the Belgae are nearest TO THE GERMANS.*
2. *Castris idōneus locus est, the place is suitable FOR A CAMP.*
3. *Deō similis est, he is like A GOD.*

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| aetās, -ātis, f. | age. |
| amicus, -a, -um, | friendly. |
| commūnis, -e, | common. |
| idōneus, -a, -um, | fit, suitable. |
| inimicus, -a, -um, | unfriendly, hostile. |
| patria, -ae, f. | native land, fatherland. |
| periculōsus, -a, -um, | dangerous. |
| similis, -e, | like, similar. |
| solum, -i, n. | ground, soil. |

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquitānī sunt proximī prōvinciae. 2. Aquitānī sunt propiōrēs prōvinciae quam Italiae. 3. Genāva est oppidum proximum Helvētiōrum finibus. 4. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. 5. Cāstris nōn idōneus omnis locus est. 6. Negat castris idōneum omnem locum esse. 7. Sī castris idōneus locus sit, militēs laetentur.¹ 8. Nōn ego sum idōneus armīs. 9. Sī ego fuisset idōneus armīs, laetātus essem. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiis erat amicus. 11. Dux inimiciōr Dumnorigī fuit quam Caesarī. 12. Mātrī puella est similis. 13. Nōn omnis puer est similis patrī. 14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnis. 15. Patriae solum omnibus cārum est. 16. Populō Rōmānō periculōsum est proelium. 17. Omnī urbī lēgēs sunt utilēs. 18. Imperātor suōs militēs hortātur ut fortēs sint² et urbī Rōmae utilēs.

Write in Latin.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province. 2. Ocelum was the furthestmost town of the hither province and nearest to the Alps. 3. If the place had been suitable for a camp, we should have rejoiced.⁸ 4. Let us urge the soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland. 5. The lieutenant was most friendly to the soldiers. 6. The daughter is more like (her) father than (her) mother. 7. I do⁴ not think (that) the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4. What kind of a sentence is this? (*so*)

² See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

⁸ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁴ See LN. X., NOTE 4.



LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition. A. & G. 25, *f*: A. & S. 74 (5): G. 16, 5: H. 303.

88. Derivation. A. & G. 148, *a, b, d*: A. & S. 174, *b, c*: B. 76, 1; 77, 3; 140: G. 91, 1, *b-d*; 2, *a-d*; 92, 1, 2: H. 304, I-IV.

89. Classification. A. & G. 149, *a-g*: B. 140: H. 305, NOTE 2, 1) - 4).

90. Comparison. A. & G. 92: A. & S. 175: B. 76, 2; 77, 1: G. 93: H. 306.

91. Syntax. A. & G. 207: A. & S. 557: B. 347, 1: G. 439, 2: H. 551.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| ācritē , adv. | <i>sharply, fiercely.</i> |
| audācter , adv. | <i>boldly, courageously.</i> |
| celeriter , adv. | <i>quickly, immediately.</i> |
| facile , adv. | <i>easily, readily.</i> |
| fortiter , adv. | <i>bravely, valiantly.</i> |
| graviter , adv. | <i>heavily, severely.</i> |
| liberē , adv. | <i>freely, unreservedly.</i> |
| quā , adv. | <i>where.</i> |

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortiter¹ pūgnāvērunt. 2. Sī militēs fortius pūgnent, imperātor laetētur. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācrius pūgnābunt quam Gallī.² 4. Germānī Helvētiōs facile³ superābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesare nōn facillimē superātī sunt. 6. Nūntiat Gallōs ā Caesare nōn facillimē superātōs esse. 7. Caesar Dumnorigem gravissimē accūsāvit. 8. Caesar celeriter concilium dīmittit (*dismisses*). 9. Liscus dīcit liberius⁴ atque⁵ audācius. 10. Quā⁶ minima altitūdō flūminis erat. 11. Iūmentōrum et carōrum quam⁷ māximum numerum coēmere⁸ (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quam fortissimē pūgnābant. 13. Helvētīi Rōmānīs⁹ quam amīcissimī fuērunt. 14. Solum patriae civī quam cārissimum est.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing an adverb.* — **fortiter** is an adverb of manner (*89*); derived from the adjective **fortis** (*88*); compared **fortiter**, **fortius**, **fortissimē** (*90*); of the positive degree and modifies **pūgnāvērunt** (*91*).

² What is the construction of **Gallī**?

³ See *88*.

⁴ **liberē** has no Superlative.

⁵ See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1.

⁶ As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

⁷ **quam** modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it: e. g. **quam māximum**, *as large as possible*; **quam fortissimē**, *as bravely as possible*.

⁸ (..) is the mark of *Diaeresis*; when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation: e. g. *coëmere* has four syllables; *coemere* would have only three.

⁹ See 86.



LESSON XLIII.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 130: A. & S. 222: B. 103: G. 123; 124: H. 207. See 27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.

VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| moneō, | -ēre, -uī, -itum, | <i>advise.</i> |
| habeō, | -ēre, -uī, -itum, | <i>have.</i> |
| prohibeō, | -ēre, -uī, -itum, | <i>restrain, keep from.</i> |

¹ Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like *moneō*. For the *principal parts* let *-ēre, -uī, -itum* take the place of final *-eō*: e. g. *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum*.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis¹ of each verb; name its elements.

1. Monēbātis, monēbitis, monuistis. 2. Sī moneāmus,² sī monērēmus, sī monuissēmus. 3. Monē, monēte, monentō. 4. Monēns, monitūrus. 5. Monēre, monuisse, monitūrus esse. 6. Ut equōs habeāmus.² 7. Ut rēx urbēs multās³ et māgnās habeat. 8. Multa castra habēbimus. 9. Lēgātus multōs mīlitēs habuerit.⁴ 10. Habētō, habētōte.⁵ 11. Habēns, habitūrus. 12. Habēre, habuisse, habitūrus esse. 13. Sī Helvētiōs itinere⁶ prohibeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs itinere prohibuissent. 15. Helvētiōs itinere prohibeāmus.⁷ 16. Itinere Helvētiōs prohibēre⁸ cōnantur. 17. Itinere hostēs prohibēbimus. 18. Mīlitēs itinere hostēs prohibēre cōnābuntur. 19. Sī itinere mīlitēs prohibuissēmus. 20. Lēgātī nostrōs virōs monuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had.
2. If you should have, if you had, if you had had.
3. Have ye, he shall have, they shall have.
4. To restrain, to have restrained, to be about to restrain.
5. If we should keep the soldiers from the town.
6. If we shall have kept the soldiers from the town.
7. Let us keep the enemy from the town.
8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 1.² See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLES.³ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (42)⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (47)⁶ *itinere* is an *Ablative of Separation*. A. & G. 243: A. & S. 413: B. 214: G. 390, 1, 2: H. 413; 414.⁷ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.⁸ See 69.

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice? Of the Imperative? Of the Infinitives and Participles? How are the different Stems of a verb found? (28, 45, 50)
 What two uses has the Perfect Indicative? (43)



LESSON XLIV.*

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. *Accusative of Time*. A. & G. 256: A. & S. 423: B. 181: G. 336: H. 379. This answers the question, *How long?*

VOCABULARY.

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|---------|-----------------|
| dēlēō, | -ēre, -ēvī, | -ētum, | destroy. |
| doceō, | -ēre, -uī, | doctum, | teach. |
| iubeō, | -ēre, iussī, | iūssum, | command, order. |

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER: — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 172 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, | stay, remain. |
| moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, | move, remove. |
| obtineō, -ēre, -uī, obtentum, | hold, obtain. |
| possessiō, -ōnis, f. | possession. |
| vīcus, -ī, m. | village. |

Analyze and parse.

1. Germānī multōs vicōs dēlēverant. 2. Aliud¹ iter habēbant nūllum. 3. Quam² plūrimās civitatēs habēbant. 4. Allobrogēs trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēque³ habēbant. 5. Puerōs⁴ litterās⁴ doceāmus. 6. Dīcit mātrem⁵ filiās litterās docēre. 7. In Galliā ulteriōre multōs annōs⁶ manēbimus. 8. Caesar senātōrem hortātur ut⁷ in castrīs multōs mēnsēs maneat.⁷ 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat. 10. Divicō lēgatiōnis locum principem obtinēbat. 11. Sī imperātor castra moveat, militēs fortius⁸ pūgnent. 12. Castra⁹ movēre¹⁰ celerius nōn potuērunt.¹¹ 13. Itinere¹² Helvētiōs prohibēre nōn poterunt.¹¹ 14. Helvētīī suis finibus Germānōs prohibēbant. 15. Proximum¹³ iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs est. 16. Sed in summō iugō duās (two) legiōnēs,¹⁴ quās (which) in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat (he had enlisted), et omnia auxilia¹⁴ conlocārī¹⁵ iussit.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Which adjectives have their Genitive in *ius* and Dative in *i*? (24)

² See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

³ See LN. XXIV., VY., NOTE.

⁴ See 71.

⁵ See 53.

⁶ See 93.

⁷ How is *ut* — *maneat* to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ From what adjective is *fortiter* derived?

⁹ What does *castra* signify in the Singular?

¹⁰ See 69.

¹¹ How do *potuērunt* and *poterunt* differ from each other?

¹² See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹³ *proximum*, *shortest*.

¹⁴ *legiōnēs* and *auxilia* are subjects of *conlocārī*. (53)

¹⁵ *conlocārī* (to be stationed) with its subjects is object of *iussit*. (52)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

94. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
 A. & G. 130: A. & S. 223: B. 104: G. 123; 124: H. 208.
 See also 73, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentum, | <i>hem in, bound.</i> |
| (diciō), ¹ -ōnis, f. | <i>dominion, power.</i> |
| ōceanus, -ī, m. | <i>ocean.</i> |
| rapīna, -ae, f. | <i>plundering.</i> |
| servitūs, -ūtis, f. | <i>slavery.</i> |
| teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, | <i>hold, keep.</i> |
| undique, adv. | <i>on all sides.</i> |

¹ Used only in the oblique cases of the Singular.

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Ūna pars continētur ¹ Garumnā ² flūmine, ³ Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum. 2. Undique locī nātūrā ⁴ Helvētiī continentur. 3. Summus mōns ⁵ ā Titō Labiēnō tenēbatur. 4. Nūntiat summum mōntem ā hostibus tentum esse. 5. Sī summus mōns ā hostibus teneātur, nostrī militēs quam ācerrimē ⁶ pūgnent. 6. Aeduī in servitūte atque in diciōne Germānōrum tentī sunt. 7. Caesar memoriā tenēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesare rapīnis ⁷ prohibēbatur. 9. Summus mōns ā hostibus tenērī nōn potest. ⁸ 10. Galli tenērī in servitūte nōn poterant. ⁸ 11. Obsidēs multōs annōs in servitūte tenēbantur. 12. Sī multōs annōs in servitūte tentī essēmus, nōn felīcēs fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top ⁵ of the mountain will be held by Caesar.
2. The top of the mountain could ⁸ not be held by Caesar.

3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans. 4. If Cassius should keep in memory. 5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.⁹

Notes and Questions.

¹ Define the Passive Voice. (79) What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? Name the three Stems of *contineō*. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed?

² See 54.

³ See 25.

⁴ *loci nātūrā*, by the character of their country.

⁵ *summus mōns*, the top of the mountain; we might expect the highest mountain.

⁶ From *ācriter*; from what adjective is *ācriter* derived?

⁷ *rapinīs*; translate by the Singular; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ When *possum* governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can*, if in the Present Tense; by *could*, if in a Past Tense; e. g. *tenēri potest*, can be held; *tenēri poterat*, could be held.

⁹ See 93.



LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. 135: A. & S. 223, use *moneor* for model: B. 113, II.: G. 220; 128, 2: H. 231, 1-3; NOTE under 232.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>in-tueor, -ēri, in-tuitus sum,</i> ¹ | <i>look at.</i> |
| <i>nē, adv.</i> | <i>not</i> , used with the Subjunctive and Imperative. |
| <i>nē, conj.</i> | <i>that not</i> ; after verbs of fearing, <i>that</i> ; used with the Subjunctive. |
| <i>polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum,</i> | <i>promise.</i> |
| <i>vereor, -ēri, veritus sum,</i> | <i>fear.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frumentum pollicentur.² 2. Aedui frumentum publicē polliciti erant. 3. Vereor nē Aedui Rōmānīs³ frumentum polliceantur.⁴ 4. Nē⁵ frumentum polliceāmur.⁶ 5. Si Aedui frumentum mātūrum polliciti essent, Caesar fēlix fuisset. 6. Rōmānī nōn hostem verentur sed angustiās itineris. 7. Nē Divitiacī animum offenderet (*he should offend*) verēbātur. 8. Nūntiat⁷ Sēquanōs terram intuērī. 9. Negat⁸ Rōmānōs hostem veritōs esse. 10. Sōlem intuērī nōn possumus. 11. Nē sōlem intueāmur. 12. Verēbāmur nē hostēs agrōs nostrōs populārentur. 13. Verēmur nē hostēs agrōs nostrōs populentur. 14. Verēminī nē hostēs agrōs vestrōs populentur. 15. Rōmānīs frumentum nōn polliciti sumus. 16. Rōmānī Helvētiīs obsidēs nōn pollicēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising. 2. They have promised ripe corn. 3. He says that they⁹ have promised ripe corn. 4. He fears that the Romans will promise⁴ corn to our enemies.⁸ 5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls. 6. Let us not look at the men. 7. Let us not fear the difficulties of the route. 8. I fear the route will be⁴ dangerous.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.

² Define a Deponent Verb. (77) What Participles do Deponent Verbs have? What Infinitives?

³ See 39.

⁴ When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which is in the *Present Tense*, render it by the *Future Indicative*: nē Aedui polliceantur, *that the Aedui will promise*.

⁶ nē is here an adverb.

⁸ See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.

⁹ they, eōs.

⁷ What is the object of nūntiat?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. 68; 69: A. & S. 126; 127: B. 48; 49; 50: G. 61; 62: H. 116, 1, 2; 118, (1).

97. *Declension of domus.* A. & G. 70, f: A. & S. 130: B. 49, 4: G. 61, 2: H. 119.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| adventus, -ūs, m. | arrival, approach. |
| com-moveō, -ēre, com-mōvī, com-mōtum, | move, disturb. |
| cōnspectus, -ūs, m. | sight, view. |
| cornū, -ūs, n. | horn; of an army, wing. |
| dexter, dextra, dextrum, | right. |
| domus, -ūs, f. | house; domī, at home. |
| equitātus, -ūs, m. | cavalry. |
| exercitus, -ūs, m. | army. |
| impetus, -ūs, m. | attack. |
| paene, adv. | almost. |
| semper, adv. | always. |
| sustineō, -ēre, -uī, sustentum, | sustain, withstand. |

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesaris adventū.¹ 2. Helvētīi Caesaris adventū² commōtī sunt. 3. In cōnspectū hostium. 4. Omnium³ ex cōnspectū. 5. Paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī⁴ agrī vāstantur. 6. Cum equitātū Helvētīōrum. 7. Māgnū numerum equitātūs semper habēbat. 8. Equitātus sustinēbat hostium impetum. 9. Labiēnus exercituī⁵ Rōmānō praefuit. 10. Hostēs impetūs mīlitum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 11. Equitātum omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) quī⁶ impetum hostium sustineat.⁶ 12. Nē hostium adventū commoveāmur. 13. Ā dextrō cornū; ad dextrum cornū. 14. Caesar domī fuit. 15. Sēquanī itinere⁷ exercitum nostrum prohibēre cōnantur.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 16. How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another? (§) What is the *Stem-Ending* of each? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension?

² See 79.

³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

⁴ *nostrī* modifies *exercitūs*.

⁵ See 67.

⁶ *qui* — *sustineat*, to withstand.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.



LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. NOTE; 72; 73; 74, d: A. & S. 132, a; 133 (2), (3): B. 51; 52, 1, 4; 53: G. 63, REMARKS 1, 2, NOTE 1; 64: H. 120, 1, 2; 122; 123.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| com-meātus, -ūs, m. | <i>supplies, provisions.</i> |
| com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>prepare.</i> |
| diēs, diēī, m. | <i>day.</i> |
| fidēs, fidēī, f. | <i>faith, pledge, promise.</i> |
| perniciēs, perniciēī, f. | <i>ruin, destruction.</i> |
| profectiō, -ōnis, f. | <i>departure.</i> |
| rēs, rei, f. | <i>thing, affair.</i> |
| spēs, speī, f. | <i>hope, expectation.</i> |

Analyze and parse.

1. Cum perniciē¹ exercitūs. 2. Ad suam perniciem.
 3. Ūnō diē. 4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*). 5. Sine spē.
 6. In meliōrem² spem. 7. Māgnam in spem.
 8. Māgnās spēs habēmus. 9. Rēs Helvētiīs³ ēnūntiāta est.
 10. Putat rēs Helvētiīs ēnūntiātās esse. 11. Omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparātae sunt. 12. Caesar paucōs diēs⁴ ad⁵ Vesontiōnem cōmmeātūs causā⁶ morātur.

13. Caesar Gallis fidem dabit. 14. Vereor nē Caesar Helvētiis fidem det.⁷ 15. Si Caesar Germānis fidem det, Rōmānī nōn laetentur. 16. Caesar Divitiacō⁸ māximam fidem habēbat. 17. Germānis parvam habet fidem. 18. Caesarī fidem habeāmus.⁹

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans. 2. He says (that) the affair has been reported to the Romans. 3. We had great expectations. 4. We shall prepare all things for the departure. 5. With the ruin of many cities. 6. We shall delay many days near⁵ Rome for the sake of provisions. 7. We fear that the leader will give⁷ a pledge to the Romans. 8. We have the greatest confidence in⁸ the Helvetii. 9. They have very little¹⁰ confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the Stem of *perniciēs*, *diēs*, *spēs*, *fidēs*? When is the final Stem-Vowel short? What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension? Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

² See 84.

³ See 39.

⁴ See 93.

⁵ See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

⁶ See General Vocabulary under *causa*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁸ *Divitiacō* — *fidem habēbat*, *had* — confidence in *Divitiacus*; lit., *had confidence* TO *Divitiacus*. See 39.

⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

¹⁰ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.



LESSON XLIX.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131: A. & S. 222 *regō*; B. 105; G. 125; H. 209; 241-248.

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **i**. The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ō**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **e**.

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is **a** in the First Singular, **e** in the Third Singular Active and Third Plural, Active and Passive, elsewhere **ō**.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | | |
|------------|-------|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| con-tendō, | -ere, | con-tendī, | con-tentum, | <i>hasten, march rapidly.</i> |
| dī-mittō, | -ere, | dī-misi, | dī-missum, | <i>dismiss.</i> |
| gerō, | -ere, | gessi, | gestum, | <i>carry, carry on.</i> |
| mittō, | -ere, | miſi, | missum, | <i>send.</i> |
| tollō, | -ere, | sustulī, | sublātum, | <i>lift, take away.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar in *Ītaliā* māgnīs itineribus¹ contendit.
2. Caesar ad hostēs contendit equitātumque omnem mittit.²
3. Caesarem hortēmur ut ad hostēs contendat.
4. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.
5. Helvētiī exercitum Rōmānum sub iugum³ misērunt.
6. Nūntiat Helvētiōs exercitum Rōmānum sub iugum misisse.
7. Imperātor celeriter concilium dimittit.
8. Cōsul spem fugae tollēbat.
9. Tolle, cōsul, spem fugae.
10. Belgae cum Germānis continenter bellum gessērunt.
11. Si omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparatae sint, in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendāmus.
12. Verēmur ut⁴ rēx cum hostibus bellum gerat.⁵

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul.
2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul.
3. The

Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.⁶
 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke.
 5. The king will have taken away the hope of flight.
 6. The king had taken away the hope of flight. 7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *māgnis itineribus, by long marches.* See 54.

² Name the Stems of *mittō*. What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation? Of the First and Second? What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why? See General Vocabulary under *iugum*.

⁴ *ut* after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not*.

⁵ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer? (93)



LESSON L.

VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE: THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. 131: A. & S. 223, *regor*: B. 106: G. 125: H. 210.

See also 73, a, of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>cingō, -ere, cinxi, cinctum,</i> | <i>surround, encircle.</i> |
| <i>dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum,</i> | <i>select, choose.</i> |
| <i>dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictum,</i> | <i>say, tell.</i> |
| <i>dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum,</i> | <i>lead, draw.</i> |
| <i>vincō, -ere, vici, victum,</i> | <i>conquer.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Exercitus Rōmānus ab Helvētiis sub iugum missus est.*¹ 2. *Orgetorix dēligitur.*¹ 3. *Cassius lēgātus*² *dēligētur.* 4. *Vix singuli carrī dūcēbantur.* 5. *Vix singuli carrī per angustias ducti erant.* 6. *Paene tōtum oppidum*

flūmine³ cingitur. 7. Nē ab hostibus³ vincāmur. 8. Si ab hostibus victi essēmus, victōriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Si Caesar exercitū⁶ praesit, nōn vincāminī. 10. Nōn imperātor² dēligēris. 11. Carrī per angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germānī ā Rōmānis vincī nōn poterant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingitur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vāllō¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Si castra vāllō cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Si Caesar imperātor dēligātur, omnēs laetentur.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered⁸ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice? Which verbs have a Passive Voice? *Ans. Transitive Verbs, i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)*

² See 64.

⁴ See 79 and Ex. 2.

⁶ See 67.

⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ See 54.

³ See LN. XXXI., NOTE 6.

⁵ See LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁹ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.

¹¹ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive. A. & G. 132 : A. & S. 222 ; 223 : B. 107 ; 108 : G. 127 : H. 211 : 212.

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. **audi-u-nt**, **audi-u-ntō** ; see also 99, *b* and *c*.

VOCABULARY.

| | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| audiō , | -īre, -ivī, -itum, | <i>hear.</i> |
| con-veniō , | -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, | <i>come together, assemble.</i> |
| mūniō , | -īre, -ivī, -itum, | <i>fortify.</i> |
| per-veniō , | -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, | <i>come to, arrive.</i> |
| veniō , | -īre, vēnī, ventum, | <i>come.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puerī multās rēs audiunt. 2. Multae rēs ā puerīs audiuntur. 3. Militēs imperātōrem audient. 4. Imperātor ā militibus audiētur. 5. Belgae tōtum oppidum mūnīvērunt.¹ 6. Tōtum oppidum ā Belgīs mūnītum est. 7. Sī castra ā militibus mūnīta essent, hostēs nōn vīcissent. 8. Mūniāmus urbem Rōmam. 9. Caesar in Galliam citeriōrem vēnit.² 10. Vēnī, vīdī,³ vīcī.³ 11. Ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniunt. 12. Militēs hortātur ut ad rīpam Rhodanī conveniant. 13. In finēs Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ubi (*where*) propter volnera mīlitum paucōs diēs⁴ mōrātī sunt. 14. Helvētī in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant⁵ et agrōs populābantur.⁶

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers. 3. The ambassador

will be heard. 4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural?
- ² How does *vēnit* differ from *venit* in meaning?
- ³ *vidi* from *videō*; *videt* from *videō*.
- ⁴ See 93.
- ⁵ How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action? (42)
- ⁶ How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action? (36)
- ⁷ How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another?



LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN *IO*.

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of *capio*.
A. & G. 131, page 100: A. & S. 222; 223: B. 109-111: G. 126: H. 217-219.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>capio</i> , | <i>capere</i> , | <i>cēpi</i> , | <i>captum</i> , | <i>take, capture.</i> |
| <i>cupio</i> , | <i>cupere</i> , | <i>cupivi</i> , | <i>cupitum</i> , | <i>desire.</i> |
| <i>facio</i> , | <i>facere</i> , | <i>fēci</i> , | <i>factum</i> , | <i>make, do; iter facere, to march.</i> |
| <i>fodio</i> , | <i>fodere</i> , | <i>fōdi</i> , | <i>fossum</i> , | <i>dig.</i> |
| <i>fugio</i> , | <i>fugere</i> , | <i>fūgi</i> , | <i>fugitum</i> , | <i>flee.</i> |
| <i>iacio</i> , | <i>iacere</i> , | <i>iēci</i> , | <i>iactum</i> , | <i>throw, hurl.</i> |
| <i>rapio</i> , | <i>rapere</i> , | <i>rapui</i> , | <i>raptum</i> , | <i>seize, plunder.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. *Rōmānī multa oppida cēpērunt.* 2. *Multa oppida ā Rōmānīs capta sunt.* 3. *Helvētiī māgnās possessionēs*

cupient. 4. Māgnae possessiōnēs ab Helvētiīs cupientur. 5. Nostri militēs tēla in hostēs iaciēbant.¹ 6. Germāni castra Rōmānōrum rapuerunt. 7. Germāni māgnam fossam fōderant. 8. Fossās multās et māgnās fōderimus. 9. Fugite,² militēs,³ in urbem. 10. Dux nūntiat hostēs⁴ oppidum captūrōs⁵ esse. 11. Lēgātus dixit oppidum ā militibus captum esse.⁶ 12. Ūna pars initium ā flūmine Rhodanō capit. 13. Lēgātus verētur nē locus ex interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat.⁷ 14. Helvētiī per prōvinciam nostram iter faciēbant. 15. Helvētiī per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Aeduōrum finēs facient. 16. Iter faciāmus in finēs Germānōrum. 17. Lēgātus militēs hortābātur quō iter celerius⁸ facerent.⁹ 18. Militēs iter celerius facere nōn possunt.

Notes.

¹ Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3 and 4.

² See 47.

³ Vocative Case.

⁴ See 53.

⁵ Why *captūrōs* and not *captūrus* ?

⁶ *captum esse*, *had been taken*.

⁷ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ *celerius*, an *adjective*, modifying *iter*.



LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Dependent Verbs. A. & G. 135 : A. & S. 223, use *regor* and *audior* for models : B. 113, III., IV. : G. 128, 2 : H. 231, 1-3 ; NOTE under 232.

104. *Ablative with certain Deponents.* A. & G. 249 : A. & S. 419 : B. 218, 1 : G. 407 : H. 421, I.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|------|-----------------------------------|
| mētor, | mētīrī, | mēnsus | sum, | <i>measure, deal out.</i> |
| nītor, | nītī, | nīsus or nīxus | sum, | <i>strive, endeavor.</i> |
| orior, | orīrī, | ortus | sum, | <i>rise, begin.</i> |
| potior, | potīrī, | potītus | sum, | <i>get possession of, obtain.</i> |
| proficīscor, | proficīscī, | profectus | sum, | <i>set out, depart.</i> |
| sequor, | sequī, | secūtus | sum, | <i>follow.</i> |
| ūtor, | ūtī, | ūsus, | sum, | <i>use, make use of.</i> |

Conjugate; name the Stems;¹ give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostēs sequitur. 2. Caesar paucōs diēs⁸ morātus² hostēs secūtus est. 3. Liscus cum legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus est. 4. Caesar mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī. 5. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus⁴ oriuntur. 6. Militēs frūmentō nōn ūtentur. 7. Frūmentō ūtī⁵ hominēs nōn poterant. 8. Pāce ūtī nōn possumus. 9. Impedīmentīs castrisque nostrī⁶ potītī sunt. 10. Nītēbantur ut imperiō potīrentur. 11. Nītentur ut⁷ tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiantur.⁷ 12. Gallī nītuntur ut impedīmentīs potiantur. 13. Dux virīs⁸ frūmentum mētītur. 14. Liscus militibus frūmentum nōn mēnsus erat. 15. Nītāmur ut tōtīus Ītalīae imperiō potiāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy. 2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls. 3. The Gauls were following our army. 4. When I shall have set out from the city. 5. We shall make use of the corn. 6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of⁷ the camp. 7. Let us strive to get possession of⁷ the baggage. 8. They attempt to get possession of⁵ the camp. 9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The Present Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending -rī in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugation.

tions, and the Ending-I in the Third (cf. 38): e. g. HORTĀRI, VERERĪ, POTĪRI, and ŪTĪ are Present Infinitives; HORTĀ, VERĒ, POTĪ, and ŪT their Present Stems.

The Supine Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending *us* (cf. 50): e. g. HORTĀTUS, VERITUS, POTĪTUS, and ŪSUS are Perfect Participles; HORTĀT, VERIT, POTĪT, and ŪS their Supine Stems.

² *morātus*, having delayed.

⁴ *finibus*, limits.

⁶ *nostrī*, our men.

⁸ See 39.

³ *diēs*, why in the Accusative?

⁵ See 69.

⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs? What is a Deponent Verb? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent*? See under *dēpōnō*, General Vocabulary.



LESSON LIV.*

GENERAL EXERCISE: PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, *b*: A. & S. 425, 426 (1): B. 182, 1: G. 337: H. 380, I, II., 2, 1).

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, *c, d*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1), (2), *a*: B. 228; 232: G. 385; 411: H. 425, I, II., 426, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, *a*: A. & S. 425; 426 (1): B. 239: G. 391: H. 412, I, II., 1.

a. 105 answers the question *Whither?* or *To what place?* 106, *Where?* or *In what place?* 107, *Whence?* or *From what place?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Caesar Genāvam (105) contendit, *Caesar hastened TO GENEVA.*
2. Liscus Aquilēlae (106) fuit, *Liscus was IN AQUILEIA.*
3. Cassius Rōmā (107) vēnit, *Cassius came FROM ROME.*
4. Divitiacus plūrimum domī poterat, *Divitiacus was very powerful AT HOME.*

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER: — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 173 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| domus, -ūs, f. | <i>house, home: domī, at home; domum, home, homeward; domō, from home.</i> |
| nihil (an indecl. neuter noun), | <i>nothing.</i> |
| Noviodūnum, -ī, n. | <i>Noviodunum.</i> |
| plūrimus, -a, -um, | <i>most: plūrimum posse, to be very powerful.</i> |
| prae-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, | <i>send forward.</i> |
| re-vertor, -verti, -versus sum, | <i>return.</i> |
| Suēvī, -ōrum, m. | <i>the Sueri.</i> |
| trā-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, | <i>lead across.</i> |

Analyze and parse.

1. Cōsulēs Rōmae plūrimōs¹ annōs² fuērunt. 2. Rōmā vērērunt lēgātī Genāvam. 3. Divitiacus plūrimum³ domī⁴ atque in reliquā Galliā poterat.³ 4. Imperātor omnem equitātum Noviodūnum praemisit. 5. Domum mittam puerōs malōs. 6. Suēvī ad ripās Rhēnī vērērunt et domum revertēbantur. 7. Nītēmur ut Norēiam revertāmur. 8. Sī Rōmā proficiscāmur,⁵ nōn domum revertāmur. 9. Verēmur ut⁶ nostrī amīcī Rōmae multōs diēs maneant.⁶ 10. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervērērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many¹ days.² 2. The friends will come home. 3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva. 5. He fears that we shall not⁶ return⁶ home. 6. Let⁷ us return home. 7. They will attempt to return to Geneva. 8. He was not able to return home. 9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly⁸ they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.

Notes.

- ¹ See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2. ² See 93.
³ See EX. 4. ⁴ How is *domus* declined? (97)
⁵ How is the Present Subjunctive with *si* translated? (LN. XXIX.
 EX. 1.)
⁶ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4 and XLIX., NOTE 4.
⁷ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.
⁸ See LN. LII., NOTE 8 and LN. XXXVI., EX. 5.



LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*. A. & G. 94, *a-e*: A. & S. 146; 156; 157 (1), (2); 158-160; 161, *g*: B. 78-81: G. 94-96; 293: H. 171; 172; 174-179.

109. *Extent in Space.* A. & G. 257: A. & S. 423: B. 181: G. 335; 336: H. 379. This answers such questions as *How far?* *How deep?* *How high?* *How wide?* *How long?*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Castra ab urbe mīlla passuum octō absunt, the camp is EIGHT MILES distant from the city.*
2. *Flūmen pedēs vīgintī altum est, the river is TWENTY FEET deep.*
3. *Mōns pedēs nōngentōs altus est, the mountain is NINE HUNDRED FEET high.*

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>alter, altera, alterum,</i> | <i>one of two, the other.</i> |
| <i>lātus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>wide.</i> |
| <i>longus, -a, -um,</i> | <i>long.</i> |
| <i>passus, -ūs, m.</i> | <i>step, pace; mīlle passuum, a mile;</i> <i>lit., a thousand paces.</i> |

pēs, pedis, m.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum,

vigilia, -ae, f.

*foot.**place, put; castra pōnere, to pitch a camp.**watch; dē primā vigiliā, in the first watch.*

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pedēs quadrāgintā trēs lātum.¹ 2. Mōns decem mīlia² trecentōs pedēs altus est. 3. Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta. 4. Fossa pedēs quīndecim lāta est. 5. Militēs duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās fōdērunt. 6. Caesar domum³ tertiam⁴ legiōnem mīsit. 7. Dē tertiā vigiliā⁵ centum et trīgintā quīnque militēs praemittit. 8. Mīlia passuum⁶ tria ab urbe castra posuit. 9. Oppida ad⁷ quadrāgintā et vicōs ad quadrīngentōs incendunt. 10. Erant itinera duo: ūnum per Sēquanōs; alterum per prōvinciam nostram. 11. Summa⁸ erat caputem Helvētiōrum⁹ mīlia ducenta et sexāgintā tria. 12. Circiter mīlia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from Rome.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What does *lātum* modify? What is it modified by?

² Spelled also with two I's: *millia*.

³ See 108.

⁴ What kind of a numeral is *tertiam*?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named *prima vigilia*, *secunda vigilia*, *tertia vigilia*, *quarta vigilia*.

⁶ A Roman pace (*passus*) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ *ad* with numerals signifies *about*.

⁸ *summa*, the sum total.

⁹ *capitum Helveticorum*, of the *Helvetii*; lit. of the heads of the *Helvetii*.



LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. 77, 6, a: A. & S. 300, a: H. 125; 126.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. 256; A. & S. 424; B. 230; 231; G. 393; H. 429. The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When?* *At what time?* *Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See 98.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Diē septimō pervēnit*, he arrived ON THE SEVENTH DAY.
2. *Proximā nocte castra mōvit*, THE NEXT NIGHT he broke up camp.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>dī-vidō, -videre, -visī, -visum,</i> | <i>divide, separate.</i> |
| <i>in-colō, -colere, -colui, -cultum,</i> | <i>inhabit, dwell.</i> |
| <i>iūs-iurandum, iūris-iurandī, n.</i> | <i>oath.</i> |
| <i>lacus, -ūs, m.</i> | <i>lake.</i> |
| <i>mēnsis, -is, m.</i> | <i>month.</i> |
| <i>potēns, potentis, adj.</i> | <i>able, powerful.</i> |
| <i>prō, prep. w. abl.</i> | <i>before, for.</i> |
| <i>rēs-pūblica, rei-pūblicae, f.</i> | <i>republic, commonwealth.</i> |

Analyze and parse.

1. *Gallī Rōmānīs*¹ *iūs-iurandum dedērunt*.
2. *Dixit Gallōs Rōmānīs iūs-iurandum dedisse*.²
3. *Multās rēs*

iūre-iūrandō³ sãnxērunt (*they ratified*). 4. In⁴ rem-pūblicam lēgātus sex legiōnēs dūxit. 5. Prō rē-pūblicā; prō castris. 6. Per trēs potentissimōs populōs tōtius⁵ Galliae. 7. In finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt. 8. Proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā⁶ castra mōvērunt. 9. Proximō diē Caesar ē castris cōpiās suās ēdūxit. 10. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit. 11. Domī⁷ mānsērunt septem mēnsēs.⁸ 12. Quadrā-gintā trēs annōs rēgnāvit. 13. Nītāmur⁹ ut sōlis occāsū proficiscāmur.¹⁰ 14. Gallia est¹¹ omnis dīvisā¹¹ in partēs trēs, quārum (*of which*) ūnam¹² incolunt Belgae, aliam¹² Aquitānī,¹³ tertiam¹² Galli.¹³ 15. Ā lacū Lemannō ad mōntem Iūram fossam vīgintī pedēs¹⁴ lātā fōdit. 16. Dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus est. 17. Dīcit hostēs sub mōnte castra posuisse mīlia¹⁴ pas-suum ab nostris castris octō.¹⁵

Notes.

¹ See 39.² See LN. XVII.³ See 54.⁴ in, against.⁵ Which adjectives are declined like tōtus? (24)⁶ See LN. LV., NOTE 5.⁷ See 106.⁸ See 93.⁹ See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.¹⁰ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.¹¹ est — dīvisā is the same as dīvisā — est.¹² Understand partem.¹³ Subject of incolunt understood.¹⁴ See 109.¹⁵ octō modifies mīlia.

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of ego, tū, sui. A. & G. 98, 1, 2, b, 3; 99, d, e; A. & S. 178; 179; 186; 431, e; 449, (1): B. 82-86: G. 99-102: H. 182, 184, 2, 3, 4, 6; 185.

Translate and parse.

1. Ego¹ sum malus² sed tū es bonus. 2. Ego vōs sub iugum mittam. 3. Nōs vōbīs³ amīcī sumus. 4. Nūntiat nōbīs tē vēnisse. 5. Ego dē primā vigiliā profectus essem, sī tū vēnissēs. 6. Nostra cōsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 7. Obsidēs inter sēsē⁴ dant. 8. Inter sē iūs-iūrandum dant. 9. Omnēs linguā,⁵ institūtis,⁶ lēgibus⁶ inter sē⁵ differunt (*differ*). 10. Helvētiī suīs finibus⁷ Germānōs prohibēbant. 11. Caesar suōs militēs in Galliam mittet sed in prōvinciam nostrōs.⁸ 12. Tuus filius in Galliam citeriōrem iter faciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman, but you are a Gaul. 2. He will announce to you (that) we have come. 3. Your plans will be reported to us. 4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other. 5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other. 6. I shall send my soldiers home⁹ but yours into Gaul. 7. You will be friendly to us. 8. I fear that you will not¹⁰ be¹¹ friendly to us.

Notes.

¹ *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — *ego* is a personal pronoun; declined, *ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē*; Plural, *nōs, nostrum* or *nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs*; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of *sum*; rule (see 32).

² See 64.

³ See 86.

⁴ *inter sēsē, to each other*; lit. *among themselves*.

⁵ *inter sē, from one another*.

⁶ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

⁷ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁸ *nostrōs, ours*: sc. *militēs*.

⁹ See 108.

¹⁰ See LN. XLIX., NOTE 4.

¹¹ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of *hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem*. A. & G. 100-102: A. & S. 180-182: B. 87; 88: G. 103; 104: H. 186, I.-VI.

Analyze and parse.

1. *Hōrum*¹ omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 2. *Hi* omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. 3. *Eōrum*² ūna pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. 4. *Minimē*³ ad eōs mercātōrēs⁴ saepe commeant. 5. *Eī* filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. 6. *Is* sibi⁵ lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. 7. *Ea* rēs est⁶ *Helvētiis* ēnūntiāta. 8. *Eōdem* diē⁷ cum duābus⁸ legiōnibus proficiscētur et iis⁹ ducibus. 9. *Ipsē*¹⁰ ex *Helvētiis* uxōrem habet. 10. *Ipsī* in eōrum¹¹ finibus bellum gerunt. 11. *Milia*¹² passuum tria⁸ ab eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdem¹³ nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiantur. 13. *Ipsē* dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere¹⁴ ad eōs contendit equitātumque¹⁵ omnem ante sē mittit.

Notes.

¹ Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. *hi omnēs differunt*, all THESE differ; *ad hās suspiciōnēs*, to THESE suspicions. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

² *is* is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person*, and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it*; e. g. *is sibi suscepit*, HE took upon himself; *ad eōs*, to THEM; *in eōrum finibus*, in THEIR territory; *eiūs militēs*, HIS soldiers; *ei dat*, he gives to HIM.

³ *minimē* modifies *saepe*.

⁵ See 67.

⁷ See 111.

⁴ See 32.

⁶ *est ēnūntiāta* = *ēnūntiāta est*.

⁸ See 108.

⁹ Is *is* used substantively or adjectively ?

¹⁰ *ipse*—*habet*, *he himself has*.

¹¹ See NOTE 2.

¹² See 109.

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one*, *man*, *men*, *persons*, or *soldiers*, if masculine ; *thing* or *things*, if neuter : e. g. *hic est fortis*, *THIS ONE is brave*, or *THIS MAN is brave* ; *ab illis*, *by THE SAME PERSONS* ; *idem cōnantur*, *they attempt THE SAME THING*.

¹⁴ *eōdem itinere*, *by the same route*.

¹⁵ See LN. XXIV., NOTE 1.

LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*) : RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. 103 ; 104, *e* : A. & S. 184 : B. 89 : G. 105 : H. 187, 2.

115. Agreement. A. & G. 198 : A. & S. 342 : B. 250 : G. 613 ; 614 : H. 445, NOTE 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Aquītānia ad eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet*, *Aquitania extends to that PART of the Ocean WHICH is near Spain.*
2. *Flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit*, *by the river RHINE, WHICH separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*
3. *Proximīque sunt Germānis, quibuscum¹ bellum gerunt*, *and they are very near TO THE GERMANS, with WHOM they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Proximīque sunt Germānis*,² *quī*³ *trāns Rhēnum incolunt*. 2. *Ad mōntem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit*. 3. *Ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae oppidum*⁴ *extrēmum*. 4. *Allobrogēs, quī*

trāns Rhodanum vicōs possēssiōnēsq̄ue habēbant, ad Caesarem veniunt. 5. Vocat Casticum, cūius⁵ pater rēgnū multōs annōs⁶ obtinuerat. 6. Pōntem,⁷ quī est ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.⁸ 7. Undique locī nātūrā⁹ Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte¹⁰ flūmine¹¹ Rhēnō¹² lātissimō atque altissimō, quī¹³ agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā¹⁴ ex parte mōnte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā¹⁵ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Write in Latin.

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus, whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Germans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva. 5. He came with the very¹⁶ soldiers whom we have seen. 6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large number.

Notes.

¹ Observe that *cum* is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal Pronouns.

² See 86.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — *quī* is a Relative Pronoun; declined, *quī, quae, quod, cūius*, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Masculine Plural to agree with its antecedent *Germānīs* (see 115); and in the Nominative, because it is the subject of *incolunt* (39).

⁴ See 64.

⁵ *cūius, whose.*

⁶ See 93.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.

¹⁰ *ūnā ex parte, on one side.*

¹¹ See 54.

¹² See 25.

¹³ A. & G. 199: A. & S. 343 a: B. 250, 3: G. 614, REMARK 3 b: L. 445, 4.

¹⁴ *alterā, second.*

¹⁵ *tertiā, sc. ex parte.*

¹⁶ Translate *the very* by the proper case of *ipse*.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quis** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **aliquis** and **quis**. A. & G. 104, *a, e*; 105, *d*: A. & S. 183; 184, *a, b*: B. 91, 1: G. 106; 107: H. 188, I, II, 1, 3; 189; 190, 1, NOTE 1.

a. ali-quis is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

| | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------|--------------------------|----------------|
| SING. | <i>Nom.</i> ali-quis, | ali-quid, |
| | <i>Gen.</i> ali-cūius, | ali-cūius, |
| | <i>Dat.</i> ali-cui, | ali-cui, |
| | <i>Acc.</i> ali-quem, | ali-quid, |
| | <i>Abl.</i> ali-quō, | ali-quō. |
| PLUR. | <i>Nom.</i> ali-quī, | |
| | <i>Gen.</i> ali-quōrum, | |
| | <i>Dat.</i> ali-qui-bus, | |
| | <i>Acc.</i> ali-quōs, | |
| | <i>Abl.</i> ali-qui-bus. | |

As an *adjective* it is declined :

| | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------|-----------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| SING. | <i>Nom.</i> ali-quis and ali-quī, | ali-qua, | ali-quod, |
| | <i>Gen.</i> ali-cūius, | ali-cūius, | ali-cūius, |
| | <i>Dat.</i> ali-cui, | ali-cui, | ali-cui, |
| | <i>Acc.</i> ali-quem, | ali-quam, | ali-quod, |
| | <i>Abl.</i> ali-quō, | ali-quā, | ali-quō. |
| PLUR. | <i>Nom.</i> ali-quī, | ali-quae, | ali-qua, |
| | <i>Gen.</i> ali-quōrum, | ali-quārum, | ali-quōrum, |
| | <i>Dat.</i> ali-qui-bus, | ali-qui-bus, | ali-qui-bus, |
| | <i>Acc.</i> ali-quōs, | ali-quās, | ali-qua, |
| | <i>Abl.</i> ali-qui-bus, | ali-qui-bus, | ali-qui-bus. |

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quis mē vocat?* WHO calls me?
2. *Quem vidistī?* WHOM did you see?
3. *Quid domum nōn vēnērunt?* WHY have they not come home?
4. *Aliquem ad mē mittent,* they will send SOMEBODY to me.
5. *Aliquid accidit,* SOMETHING has happened.
6. *Sī quid accadat Rōmānīs,* if ANYTHING should happen to the Romans.

Parse the pronouns.

1. *Quis vōs vocāvit?* 2. *Quem videō?* 3. *Aliquem vīdī.* 4. *Aliquōs ad eum mīsērunt.* 5. *Aliquem locum occupāvit.* 6. *Cum aliquibus prīncipum vēnit.* 7. *Sī quis veniat, laeter.* 8. *Quid nōn domī fuistī?* 9. *Quae est mulier quae vēnit?* 10. *Sī quid mihi accadat, nōn laetēris.* 11. *Sī quid Rōmānīs accadat, nōn fortitēr pūgnent.* 12. *Aliquem ad tē mittam.* 13. *Aliquis dixit hunc esse cōsulem.* 14. *Eum hortābor ut cum aliquibus militum proficiscātur.* 15. *Vereor nē quis veniat.* 16. *Vereor nē quid ei accadat.* 17. *Ut aliquōs virōrum mittant, eōs hortēmur.* 18. *Cum aliquibus prīncipum ille vēnit.*



LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. 25, h; 154, a, b; 208: A. & S. 74 (7); 562; 565; 566: G. 16, 7, REMARK 3; 474-480; 481, 1-3: H. 309-311; 554, I., 2.

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.

et — et, conj.

itaque, conj.

or; aut — aut, either — or.

both — and.

accordingly, therefore.

| | |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| nam , conj. | <i>for.</i> |
| ne , nōnne , num , | interrogative particles (see NOTE 1). |
| neque , conj. | <i>and not; neque — neque, neither — nor.</i> |
| postquam , conj. | <i>after, as soon as.</i> |
| propterea , adv. | <i>for this reason.</i> |
| quamquam , conj. | <i>although.</i> |
| quod , conj. | <i>because.</i> |
| sed , conj. | <i>but.</i> |

Translate, and parse² the conjunctions.

1. Imperator et³ magnus et fortis est. 2. Neque³ magni neque fortes sunt consules. 3. Dux non magnus est sed fortis. 4. Dumnorigem vocat eique⁴ filiam suam in matrimonium dat. 5. Itaque rem suscepit. 6. Horum⁵ omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime⁶ absunt. 7. Helvetii iter per provinciam faciunt, propterea quod aliud⁷ iter habent nullum.⁷ 8. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus⁸; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. 9. Aut⁸ suis finibus⁹ eos prohibent, aut ipsi¹⁰ in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. 10. Miles, quamquam est fortis, non pugnabit. 11. Postquam Caesar pervenit, ita respondit. 12. Fortisne¹¹ est consul? 13. Nonne fortes sunt consules? 14. Num fortis est consul? 15. Si quid habere¹², id tibi darem. 16. Nittitur ut vincat.¹³ 17. Nonne consules domum venerant? 18. Num Titus legatus circum Genavam hiemavit?

Notes and Questions.

¹ **ne** is used to ask for information merely; **nōnne**, when the answer *yes*, and **num**, when the answer *no* is expected or implied; e. g. **bonusne est puer?** *is the boy good?* **nōnne bonus est puer?** *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not? **num bonus est puer?** *the boy is not good, is he?*

² *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate; to which subdivision of its class it belongs; what it connects: e. g.

in sentence 6, *quod* is a *subordinate conjunction*, because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause; *causal*, because it introduces a reason; it connects the subordinate clause *propterea* — *absunt* with the principal clause *hōrum* — *Belgae*.

³ When a conjunction is doubled, as *et* — *et*, *aut* — *aut*, the first strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See 39 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2. ⁵ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 1.

⁶ See LN. XLII.

⁷ See 24.

⁸ Use the same word, *Tigurinus*, in translation.

⁹ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

¹⁰ What does *ipsa* emphasize?

¹¹ The interrogative particle *ne* is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² *habērem, I had.*

¹³ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.



LESSON LXII.*

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following References will aid materially in translating and understanding the *Ablative Absolute*, *Subjunctive Mood*, and *Indirect Discourse*. A. & G. 171–182, *coarse and fine print*: A. & S. 309–315: B. 160–165: G. 201; 202; 472, 1–4; 475; 504–507: H. 345–351; 354–361.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, -is, m. and f.

citizen.

in-fluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxum,

flow into, empty.

inter-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,

kill.

poscō, *poscere*, *poposci*, (no supine)

demand.

postquam, conj.

after, as soon as.

re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum,

reply, answer.

Translate and analyze¹ the following sentences.

1. *Ēius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.* 2. *Divicō respondit² ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.* 3. *Hic*

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 173 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. 4. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit. 5. Flūmen³ est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit. 6. Caesar ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad mōntem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, fossam perdūcit. 7. Quis⁴ es? Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā propter angustias ire (*to go*) nōn poterant. 9. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī,⁵ quam fēcerat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. 10. Vēnī ut tē videam.

Write in Latin.

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke? 2. They will not send us home, will they⁶? 3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived? 4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens. 5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea. 7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy. 8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good. 10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See LN. XXXVI., EXAMPLES and NOTES.

² What is the object of *respondit*?

³ See 64.

⁵ See 67.

⁴ See 64; what is the subject of *es*?

⁶ See LN. LXI., Note 1.

LESSON LXIII.

PARTICIPLES.

119. Definition. A. & G. 25, *c*; 289: A. & S. 542: H. 548.

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290: A. & S. 543-545: B. 336, 1-5: G. 282; 283: H. 550.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292: A. & S. 547: B. 337, 2: G. 664-668: H. 549, 1-5.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōlēcērunt*, all weeping threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.
2. *Liscus multōs diēs morātus profectus est*, Liscus HAVING DELAYED many days set out; or, Liscus, AFTER HE HAD DELAYED many days, set out.
3. *Caesar eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēpit*, Caesar HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties undertook the war; or, Caesar, BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED by their entreaties, undertook the war.
4. *Helvētīl ēius adventū commōtī lēgātōs mittunt*, the Helvetii BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) by his arrival send legates.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,</i> | <i>lead to, influence.</i> |
| <i>flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētum,</i> | <i>weep.</i> |
| <i>in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,</i> | <i>lead into, induce.</i> |
| <i>petō, petere, petīvī and petīl, petītum,</i> | <i>beseech, ask, beg for.</i> |
| <i>prō-lēcō, -lēcere, -lēcī, -lectum,</i> | <i>throw forward; sē prōlēcere, to throw one's self down.</i> |

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. *Omnēs flentēs¹ pācem petiērunt.*
2. *Mulierēs flentēs virōs² implōrābant.*
3. *Belgae spectant in orientem*

sōlem. 4. Hostēs in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. 5. Militēs sēsē Titō³ ad pedēs prōicient. 6. Helvētīi hīs rēbus⁴ adductī⁵ cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem cōnfirmant. 7. Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus locūtus est. 8. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē⁶ iūs-iūrandum dant. 9. Is⁷ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. 10. Sēquanī paucōs diēs morātī ad⁸ Genāvam profectī sunt. 11. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs ad eum⁷ mīsērunt. 12. Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā profectus ad⁹ Genāvam pervēnit.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of Cassius. 2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing enemy. 3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set out towards Rome. 4. Ariovistus, because he had been disturbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.⁷ 5. The Germans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine. 6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates to him.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addition the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from the verb.

² *virōs, husbands.*

³ See 39; translate as if it were a Genitive.

⁴ See 54.

⁵ Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

⁶ See LN. LVII., NOTE 4.

⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ *ad, towards, for.*

⁹ *ad, in the vicinity of.*

¹⁰ What participles has a transitive verb? See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.

LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

122. A. & G. 255 and NOTE: A. & S. 422, d: B. 227: G. 409;
410: H. 431, 1, 2, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus, Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls; or better, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*
2. *Hōc respōnsō datō discessit,*

| | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. <i>this reply having been given</i> b. <i>when this reply had been given</i> c. <i>having given this reply</i> d. <i>after giving this reply</i> e. <i>after he had given this reply</i> | } | <i>he departed.</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------|

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|
| con-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, | turn about, change. |
| dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, | depart. |
| ibi, adv. | there. |
| re-linquō, -linquere, -liquī, -līctum, | leave behind, leave. |
| respōnsum, -ī, n. | answer, reply. |
| re-vertor, -vertī, -versus sum, | return. |

Analyze and parse.

1. *Hāc ōrātiōne¹ habitā² Caesar concilium dimisit.*
2. *Hāc ōrātiōne ab Divitiacō habitā omnēs auxilium petierunt.*
3. *Hāc ōrātiōne habitā conversae sunt omnium mentēs.*
4. *Convocatīs eōrum³ prīncipibus Caesar graviter⁴ eōs accūsāt.*
5. *Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōsulibus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fecit.*
6. *Ibi Centrōnēs⁵ locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinerē⁶ exercitum*

prohibere cōnantur. 7. Mūnītis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum. 8. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī domum⁷ revertī coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum⁸ māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, graviter eōs accūsāt. 10. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for⁹ peace. 2. After giving this reply all departed. 3. He came to Rome⁷ in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries. 5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The pupil should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

² *habitā*, from *habeo*, signifying *hold, deliver, make*.

³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁴ From what adjective is *graviter* derived? What is the Stem of the adjective? What is the ending of the adverb? See LN. XLII.

⁵ See General Vocabulary.

⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

⁷ See 105.

⁸ What is the gender and number of *quōrum*? Why? (115) In what case is it? Why? (40)

⁹ *for* belongs to the *verb*; *peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative*.

LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS: FERŌ.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of *ferō*. A. & G. 139: A. & S. 245: B. 129: G. 171: H. 292.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis¹ auxilium fert. 2. Auxilium militibus² ā duce fertur. 3. Sī dux suis auxilium ferat,³ laetentur.³ 4. Sī auxilium militibus ā duce feratur,³ laetentur.³ 5. Ii⁴ suis auxilium ferre nōn poterant. 6. Ferte, militēs, vestris¹ auxilium. 7. Populus Rōmānus diū iniūriās tulit. 8. Iniūriæ ā populō Rōmānō diū lātae sunt. 9. Populum Rōmānum hortātus est ut⁶ diū iniūriās ferrent.⁵ 10. Caesar dixit populum Rōmānum diū iniūriās tulisse. 11. Numerus eōrum,⁴ quī⁶ arma ferēbant māgnus fuit. 12. Numerus eōrum, ā quibus arma ferēbantur, māgnus fuit. 13. Numerus eōrum, quī arma ferre poterant, māgnus fuit. 14. Numerus eōrum, ā quibus arma ferri poterant,⁷ parvus fuit. 15. Sī Gallis auxilium ferrēs, Galli vincerent. 16. Sī quis⁸ Rōmānis auxilium tulisset, vicissent.

Notes and Questions.

¹ The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends*, may be supplied; the *Plural Neuter*, where we may supply *things, possessions*.

² See 39.

³ See LN. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

⁴ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁵ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁶ See 115.

⁷ See LN. XLV., NOTE 8.

⁸ What is *quis* when immediately preceded by *si*, *nisi*, *nō*, or *num*? How is it declined? See LN. LX.

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ. — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. Ablative of Specification. A. & G. 253: A. & S. 412: B. 226: G. 397: H. 424. This answers the question *In what respect?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel* IN COURAGE.
2. Numerō ad duodecim, *about twelve* IN NUMBER.

VOCABULARY.

| | | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| ad-ferō, | ad-ferre, | at-tulī, | ad-lātum, ¹ | <i>bring to, carry to, offer.</i> |
| cōn-ferō, | cōn-ferre, | con-tulī, | con-lātum, | <i>bring together, carry together, collect.</i> |
| dis-ferō, | dis-ferre, | dis-tulī, | dī-lātum, | <i>carry different ways; differ.</i> |
| in-ferō, | in-ferre, | in-tulī, | in-lātum, | <i>bring into, bring upon, make upon.</i> |
| re-ferō, | re-ferre, | rettulī, | re-lātum, | <i>bring back, carry back.</i> |

Analyze and parse.

1. Hī omnēs linguā,² institūtis,² lēgibus² inter sē differunt. 2. Oppida sua omnia numerō² ad duodecim³ incendunt. 3. Eō⁴ circiter⁵ hominum numerō sēdecim milia⁸ misit. 4. Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Helvētīi tōtī Galliae⁶ bellum inferēbant. 6. Pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat. 7. Helvētīi minus facile finitimis bellum inferre poterant.⁷ 8. Obsidēs, arma, servī cōnferuntur. 9. Aeduī dixerunt frūmentum cōnferri.⁸ 10. Caesar sarcinās¹⁰ in ūnum locum cōnferri⁸ iussit.⁹

11. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī¹¹ impedimenta¹⁰ in ūnum locum contulērunt. 12. Hīs respōnsīs¹² ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
2. They will burn their cities, about five in number.
3. The Romans will make war upon the Gauls.⁶ 4. I fear that the Romans will make¹³ war upon the Gauls.
5. Let¹⁴ us make war upon both the Germans and the Belgae.
6. The baggage will be collected into one place.
7. The Gauls, having followed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

Notes and Questions.

¹ Accent the compounds of *ferō* correctly: *adferō*, *adferre*, *attuli*, *adiātum*.

² See 194.

³ See 108.

⁴ *eō* is an adverb; see GEN. VY.

⁵ *circiter* modifies the numeral.

⁶ See 67.

⁷ *poterant*, *could*.

⁸ See 52.

⁹ *iussit*, from *iubeō*.

¹⁰ What is the difference between *sarcinae* and *impedimenta*? See General Vocabulary under *sarcina* and *impedimentum*.

¹¹ *secūtī* from *sequor*; where is it made?

¹² See 122.

¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.



LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLŌ** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
A. & G. 138: A. & S. 242-244: B. 130: G. 174: H. 293.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, | <i>turn away.</i> |
| mālō, mālle, mālui, | <i>be more willing.</i> |
| nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, | <i>be unwilling, not wish.</i> |
| unde, adv. | <i>from which place, whence.</i> |
| vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, | <i>be unoccupied.</i> |
| volō, velle, volui, | <i>be willing, wish.</i> |

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduōs¹ flāgitāre² Titus frūmentum¹ vult. 2. Helvētiīs³ bellum inferre volumus. 3. Gallī finitimīs bellum inferre voluerant. 4. Si lēgātus pūgnāre velit, hostēs fugiant. 5. Num⁴ proficīscī dē tertiā vigiliā vultis? 6. Dumnorix quam⁵ plūrimās civitātēs habēre volēbat. 7. Cōsul impedimenta⁶ in ūnum locum cōferri vult. 8. Si vīs mē⁶ flēre. 9. Mōntem ā Cassiō occupārī voluit. 10. Mōns, quem⁶ ā Lābiēnō occupārī voluit, ab hostibus tenētur. 11. Dīcit velle sēsē⁶ dē rē-pūblicā⁷ cum eō loquī. 12. Caesar ab Helvētiīs discēdere² nōlēbat. 13. Nōluit eum locum vacāre Liscus. 14. Dīxit Caesarem ab Helvētiīs discēdere² nōlle. 15. Nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre. 16. Vir iniūriās diū ferre nōlet. 17. Si lēgātus iter facere nōlit, militēs laetentur. 18. Vereor nē⁸ dux suīs auxilium ferre nōlit.⁸ 19. Iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. 20. Pūgnāre² Helvētiī mālunt quam fugere.² 21. Nōnne māvīs tuīs⁹ auxilium ferre quam fugere? 22. Omnēs virtūte¹⁰ praecēdere māvult quam esse cōsul. 23. Gallīs prōdesse quam bellum inferre māluit. 24. Exercitui praeesse mālet quam domī¹¹ manēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴?
2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.⁸

3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See 71.² See A. & G. 271, a: A. & S. 532: B. 328, 1: G. 423, 2: H. 533.³ See 67.⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.⁵ See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.⁶ See 53.⁷ See 110.⁸ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.⁹ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.¹⁰ See 124.¹¹ See 106.

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): EŌ AND FĪŌ.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of eŏ and fĭŏ. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. 246; 248, a: B. 131; 132: G. 169; 173, NOTE 2: H. 294; 295, 1, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. Dē Caesaris adventū certior factus est, *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. Caesar certior factus est hostēs castra posuisse, *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt hostēs trānsīre, *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| certus, -a, -um, | <i>certain, sure ; certior fierī, to be informed ; lit., to be made more certain.</i> |
| eō, ire, ivī, itum, | <i>go.</i> |
| ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, | <i>go out, go forth, depart.</i> |
| fiō, fierī, factus sum, | <i>be made, become, occur.</i> |
| trāns-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, | <i>go across, cross.</i> |

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Domum¹ eunt; Rōmam ibō; Bibracte¹ eāmus.²
 2. Per angustiās ibāmus; per Gallōrum finēs ivērunť.
 3. I,³ miles, domum; ite, puerī, domum. 4. Hostēs per nostram prōvinciam īverant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte ire contendit. 6. Caesar cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire⁴ contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae itūrōs⁵ esse Helvētiōs dixit. 8. Propter angustiās ire⁴ nōn poterant. 9. Helvētiī dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exibant. 10. Nītuntur ut ē finibus exeant.⁶ 11. Māgnus numerus eōrum⁷ domō⁸ exibit. 12. Hic pāgus ūnus domō patrum nostrōrum memoriā⁹ exierat.¹⁰ 13. Flūmen Helvētiī rati-bus¹¹ trānsībant. 14. Sī flūmen trānseant,¹² eōs vincā-mus. 15. Sī hostēs Rhodanum trānsire cōnentur, prohibeāmus. 16. Boiī¹³ trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum¹³ trānsierant. 17. Undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fiēbat. 18. Hīs rēbus¹⁴ fiēbat. 19. Dē eius⁷ adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt. 20. Caesar eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus suās cōpiās praemittere volēbat. 21. Duo virī cōsulēs¹⁵ factī erunt. 22. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Sēquanōs per prōvinciam iter fēcisse.¹⁶

Notes and Questions.

¹ What question do *domum* and *Bibracte* answer? See 105, a.

² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 7.

³ In what is the Imperative used? (47)

⁴ See 69.

⁵ Why is *itūrōs* in the Acc. Plural?

* How is the Subjunctive with *ut* to be translated after verbs of *striving* and *endeavoring*?

⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

⁸ What question does *domo* answer?

⁹ See 111.

¹⁰ *exierat* = *exiverat*.

¹¹ *ratis*, -is, f. *raft*.

¹² See LN. XXIX., Ex. 1.

¹³ See GEN. VY.

¹⁴ See 79.

¹⁵ See 64.

¹⁶ See Ex. 2.

LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, a-c, NOTE: A. & S. 249 (1)-(3): B. 133: G. 175, 5: H. 297, I., 2.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145: A. & S. 250: B. 138: G. 208, 1, 2: H. 298; 299.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270: A. & S. 531: B. 327, 1, 2: G. 422: H. 538.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Perfacile est imperiō potiri* (129), it is very easy TO GET POSSESSION OF the government.
2. *Mihi ire* (129) *licet*, it is permitted me TO GO; or, I may go.
3. *Mihi ire* *licuit*, it was permitted me TO GO; or, I might have gone.
4. *Rogat ut id sibi facere liceat*, he asks that it be permitted him TO DO this: better, he asks permission to do this.
5. *Rogābat ut id sibi facere licēret*, he was asking that it be permitted him TO DO this; or, permission to do this.
6. *Mē ire* (129) *oportet*, it is necessary that I should go; or, I ought to go.
7. *Mē ire* *oportuit*, it was necessary that I should go; or, I ought to have gone.
8. *Dicit mē ire oportēre*, he says it is necessary that I should go; or, he says that I ought to go.

Analyze and parse.

1. Meminērunt,¹ ōdērunt. 2. Memineram Titum, videram Cassium. 3. Mementō venīre²; dicit sē meminisse. 4. Liscus dixit Dumnorigem ōdisse Caesarem et Rōmānōs. 5. Et tē et illum³ ōderāmus. 6. Neque⁴ mē neque eum ōdit. 7. Divitiacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem obsecrāre⁵ coepit. 8. Suēvī, quī⁶ ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt. 9. Omnēs milītēs Rhodanum trānsīre coepērunt. 10. Frūmentum⁷ cōnferri⁸ oportet. 11. Nōs⁷ Rhēnum trānsīre oportuit.⁹ 12. Dicit illum ad sē venīre oportēre.¹⁰ 13. Caesarem dē ēius adventū certiōrem¹¹ fierī oportuit. 14. Rogāvērunt ut sibi¹² liceret concilium tōtīus Galliae convocāre. 15. Rogāvit ut sibi ire liceret. 16. Tibi eō diē ire licēbit. 17. Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri. 18. Tibi Caesarem certiōrem facere dē meō adventū licet.¹³ 19. Tibi domum ire licuit.¹⁴

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home. 2. Are you going home? 3. You ought to go home. 4. We ought to have gone home. 5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva. 6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome, are you? 8. Are you not going to Rome? 9. Who will go home with me? 10. He says that corn ought to be collected. 11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home. 12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is a Defective Verb? What is an Impersonal Verb?

² See 89.

- ³ *illum, that one*; see LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.
⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3. ⁵ See 69.
⁶ Where is *qui* made and why? ⁷ See 53.
⁸ See 129. ⁹ See EXAMPLE 7.
¹⁰ In this sentence *illum* is the subject of *venire*; *illum* — *venire*, the subject of *oportere*; *illum* — *oportere*, the object of *dicit*.
¹¹ See LN. LXVIII., Ex. 1.
¹² How does this *sibi* differ from the *sibi* in sentence 15?
¹³ What is the subject of *licet*? ¹⁴ See EXAMPLE 3.



LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. 109, a; 129: A. & S. 229 (1), (2): B. 115: G. 129; 247; 251: H. 233; 234.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. 232: A. & S. 383: B. 189: G. 355: H. 388.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Doctūrus sum, I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*
2. *Doctūrus erat (fuit), he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*
3. *Audiendī sumus, we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*
4. *Tibi (131) audiendī sumus, you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*
5. *Agri cōsuli vāstandī erant (fuērunt), the consul had to lay waste the fields.*
6. *Vēxillum prōpōnendum erat, the flag had to be displayed.*
7. *Oppidum oppūgnandum erit, the town will have to be stormed.*
8. *Oppidum vōbis mūniendum erit, you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate¹ and parse.

1. Obsidēs tibi datūrus sum.² 2. Caesar mihi obsidēs datūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānōs victūrus fuit. 4. Hostēs ad ripās Rhēnī itūrī sunt. 5. Nūntiat hostēs ad ripās Rhēnī itūrōs esse. 6. Frūmentum³ Aeduōs³ flāgitātūrus lēgātus erat. 7. Domum itūrī sumus. 8. Patriae⁴ prōfutūrī estis. 9. Nōbīs⁵ bellum gerendum erit. 10. Duo cōsulēs creandī sunt. 11. In hostēs venientēs tēla nōbīs conicienda erant. 12. Oppidum lēgātō expūgnandum erit. 13. Per Alpēs militibus iter faciendum erit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduīs dandum est.⁶ 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesarī in Galliam mātūrandum est.⁷ 17. Caesar mātūrandum sibi esse exīstimāvit. 18. Dē ēius adventū Caesar certior⁸ faciendus est. 19. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum,⁹ quod¹⁰ erat insigne, cum ad arma concurrī¹² oporteret¹¹; signum tubā dandum⁹; ab opere revocandī¹² militēs; quī¹⁶ paulō longius¹⁴ aggeris petendī causā¹⁵ prōcesserant arcessendī¹²; aciēs instruenda,⁹ militēs cohortandī.¹²

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter. 2. I was intending to go to Bibracte. 3. The lieutenant was to storm the town. 4. My brother is about to go to the city. 5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors. 6. The boys must hasten home. 7. We must carry on war with our neighbors. 8. You will have to fortify the town. 9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers. 10. The consul had to give the signal. 11. The city will have to be fortified. 12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ Imitate the Examples in translation.
- ² Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.
- ³ See 71. ⁴ See 67.
- ⁵ See 131 and Example 8; what is the literal translation?
- ⁶ What are the different translations of this sentence? See 39 and 131.
- ⁷ *mātūrāndum est* has no *personal* subject; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.
- ⁸ See LN. LXVIII., EXAMPLE 1. ⁹ Supply *erat*.
- ¹⁰ Why is *quod* in the Neuter Singular?
- ¹¹ See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7; what is the subject of *oportēret*?
Translate by the Indicative.
- ¹² Supply *erant*. ¹³ *concurri*, to rush.
- ¹⁴ *paulō longius*, a little too far.
- ¹⁵ *aggeris* — *causā*, for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound.
- ¹⁶ The antecedent of *qui* is *ii*, which is the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*).



LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. A. & G. 226; 227: A. & S. 374 (1); 376: B. 187, II.: G. 346: H. 385, I., II., and NOTE 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Civitātī* (132) *persuāsīt ut exirent*,¹ he persuaded THE STATE to go forth.
2. *Novīs rēbus studēbat*, he was eager FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., for new things.
3. *Allobrogibus imperāvit*, he gave orders TO THE ALLOBROGES.
4. *Placuit ei* (132) *ut mitteret*,¹ it pleased HIM to send.
5. *Sī Allobrogibus satisfaciāt*, if he should give satisfaction TO THE ALLOBROGES.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōc² facilius eis persuāsit, quod³ undique loci nātūrā⁴ Helvētīi continentur. 2. Is, Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsōne cōsulibus,⁵ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus⁶ coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī⁷ persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent.¹ 3. Persuādēt Rauracīs et Tulingīs, finitimīs,⁸ utī, eōdem ūsī⁹ cōnsiliō,¹⁰ oppidis⁵ suis vicisque exūstīs,¹¹ ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur.¹ 4. Orgetorix cupiditāte rēgnī adductus⁶ novīs rēbus¹² studēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorigem favēre Helvētiis sed ōdisse¹³ Caesarem et Rōmānōs. 6. Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.¹ 7. Quamobrem placuit¹⁴ ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret. 8. Huic legiōnī Caesar indulerat praeipue. 9. Sī¹⁵ Aeduīs dē¹⁶ iniūriis, quās ipsīs¹⁷ sociisque eōrum¹⁸ intulerint,¹⁹ item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, cum iīs pacem faciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go¹ forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,² because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt⁹ the same plan, burn up¹¹ their houses and set out¹ in company with us. 5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends. 6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for¹⁶ the wrongs which he has brought upon them¹⁷ and their¹⁸ allies. 7. We can²⁰ not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.¹ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.² See 79.³ *quod* is a conjunction; what kind of a clause does it introduce?

- ⁴ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4 and 79. ⁵ See 122.
⁶ See LN. LXIII., EXAMPLES.
⁷ *civitātī, state*, is used here for *cīvibus, citizens*; hence the dependent clause has *exirent* instead of *exiret*.
⁸ See 25.
⁹ *ūsi* from *ūtor*, to adopt; lit., *having adopted, made use of*.
¹⁰ See 104.
¹¹ *oppidīs — exūstis*, to burn up their towns, etc.; lit., *their towns, etc., having been burned up.* (122)
¹² See Ex. 2.
¹³ What kind of a verb is *ōdisse*? (127)
¹⁴ *placuit* is an impersonal verb in this sentence; what is its subject?
¹⁵ Sc. *satisfaciant*. ¹⁶ *dē*, for.
¹⁷ See 67. ¹⁸ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.
¹⁹ *intulerint* from *inferō*; render it by the Perfect Indicative.
²⁰ See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 1.



LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 217: G. 398: H. 417.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472, 473, a: B. 274; 279: G. 255; 257; 260; 263: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Nōn amplius milibus (133) passuum octōdecim aberat,*
he was not more THAN EIGHTEEN MILES distant.
2. *Nihil virtūte (133) melius est, nothing is better THAN VIRTUE.*
3. *Cīvēs mei sint (134) beātī, MAY my fellow-citizens BE happy.*
4. *Amēmus (134) patriam, LET US LOVE our country.*
5. *Veniat (134), LET HIM COME.*
6. *Nē hodiē proficiscāmur (134), LET US not SET OUT to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte melius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem māiōrem esse terrā. 3. Amīcitia, quā¹ nihil melius habēmus, nobīs² ā dīs³ immortalibus data est. 4. Haec⁴ sunt dulciōra melle. 5. Militēs fortiōrēs sunt imperātore. 6. Caesar ab oppidō nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duobus castra posuit. 7. Ab urbe nōn amplius mīlibus passuum quīque castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille⁵ et quīngentīs passibus aberat. 9. Quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum⁶ existimāvit:⁷ iter⁸ ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. 10. Militēs veniant. 11. Sītis⁹ beātī. 12. Hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus. 13. Caesarem dē eius adventū certiōrem faciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quartā vigiliā nē profici-scāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fiat dē meō cōnsiliō. 16. Iter celerius per Galliam faciāmus. 17. Civitātī¹⁰ persuā-deāmus ut exeant.¹¹ 18. Novīs rēbus nē studeāmus. 19. Hostibus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduīs dē iniū-riīs, quās eōrum sociīs¹² intulimus, satisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city. 5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please¹³ you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

10. *Equitātum quī sustinēret impetum mīsit, he sent cavalry TO WITHSTAND the attack.*
 11. *Nē offenderet verēbātur, he was fearing THAT he should offend.*
 12. *Ut sociī venīrent verēbātur, he was fearing THAT the allies would NOT come.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iis frūmentī cōpiam facerent. 2. Caesar Dumnorigem monet, ut in reliquum tempus¹ suspiciōnēs vitet. 3. Nam, nē ēius suppliciō² Divitiaci animum offenderet, verēbātur. 4. Dumnorigi persuāsit ut idem³ cōnārētur. 5. Cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. 6. Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt quī dicant agrōs cōsuli⁴ vāstandōs esse.⁵ 7. Postulāvit nē aut Aeduīs⁶ aut eōrum sociīs⁶ bellum inferret. 8. Nōnnūllī pudōre adductī,⁷ ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. 9. Caesar omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs,⁸ ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus⁹ suōs¹⁰ proelium commisit. 10. Caesar ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mīsit, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem¹¹ locum medium utrūque¹² conloquiō¹³ diceret. 11. Castella commūnit, quō¹⁴ facilius, sī sē invitō¹⁵ trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Write in Latin.¹⁶

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn. 2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers. 3. We shall advise him¹⁷ to avoid suspicions in the future.¹ 4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future. 6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future. 7. We shall send cavalry to

withstand the attack of the Gauls. 8. Caesar, after removing his horse⁸ out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely. 9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that¹⁴ we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ in reliquum tempus, in the future; lit., into the remaining time.
² See 79.
³ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13; where would *idem* be made?
⁴ See 131. ⁵ See 130 and 62.
⁶ See 67. ⁷ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.
⁸ See 122 and EXAMPLES. ⁹ See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.
¹⁰ See LN. LXV., NOTE 1. ¹¹ How declined? See 116, a.
¹² *medium utriusque*, midway between both; *uterque* is declined like *uter*. (24)
¹³ See 39.
¹⁴ *quō* is preferred to *ut* when its clause contains a comparative.
¹⁵ *sē invitō*, against his will; see 122; lit., he unwilling.
¹⁶ In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.
¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.



LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231: A. & S. 384: B. 190: G. 349: H. 387.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, a: A. & S. 385; 386: B. 191, 2: G. 356: H. 390, I., II.

EXAMPLES.

1. Est mihi (137) domi pater, I have a father at home; lit., a father is to me at home.
2. Sex virō (137) filiī fuērunt, A MAN had six sons.

3. *Haec mihi (188) sunt cūrae, these (things) are A CARE TO ME; lit., these (things) are FOR A CARE TO ME.*
4. *Tertiam aciem nostris subsidio misit, he sent the third line AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).*
5. *Novissimis praesidio erant, they were A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Mihi est amicus; tibi sunt plurimi amici.* 2. *Magni pedes sunt meo fratri sed caput parvum.* 3. *Erit consuli magnus exercitus.* 4. *Imperatori fuerunt milites multi et¹ fortes.* 5. *Virtus est viro honori.* 6. *Dixit haec sibi esse cūrae.* 7. *Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit.* 8. *Legato² imperavit ut quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinqueret.³* 9. *Magno usu⁴ nostris fuit.* 10. *Nam equitatu⁵, quem⁶ auxilio Caesaris Aedu⁷ miserant, Dumnorix praeerat.* 11. *Gallis magno ad pugnam⁸ erat⁹ impedimento¹⁰, quod non satis commodē pugnare poterant.* 12. *Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus¹¹ circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis¹² praesidio erant, ex itinere¹³ nostros circumvenere.¹⁴* 13. *His rebus¹⁵ cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis¹⁶ confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futuram.¹⁷* 14. *Ariovistus dixit amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio non detrimento¹⁸ esse oportere.¹⁹*

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in battle that we could¹⁷ not fight with sufficient ease. 6. He will order the lieu-

tenant² to send¹⁸ soldiers as a relief to our men.' 7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief to our men. 8. The consul ought¹⁶ to send soldiers as a relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

- 1 See LN. VI., NOTE 3. 2 See 132.
 3 Why is the Subjunctive used ? (136) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (135)
 What question does *ut* — *relinqueret* answer ? (136)
 4 See 67.
 5 *quam*; why is the Masculine Singular used ? Why the Accusative ?
 6 *ad pānam, in battle.*
 7 The subject of *erat* is the substantive clause *quod* — *poterant.*
 8 Is *millibus* used as a noun or as an adjective ? (108) ; see also 54.
 9 *novissimis, to the hindmost ; lit., to the newest.*
 10 *ex itinere, on the march.*
 11 What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural ?
 12 See 122. 13 See 54.
 14 Sc. *esse.* 15 See 129.
 16 See 128 and Ex. 8. 17 See LN. XXVIII., Ex. 2.
 18 See 136.



LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. Subjunctive of Result. A. & G. 319, *d*; 332, *a*: A. & S. 483; 494, *a*; 499: B. 284, 1-3: G. 551; 552; 553, 1-4: H. 500, I, II.; 501, I, 1; 504.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tantus timor exercitum occupāvit ut omniū mentēs perturbāret, such fear seized the army THAT IT DISTURBED the minds of all.**
2. **Dixit nō sē tam barbarum esse ut nō scīret, he said he was not so uncivilized AS not TO KNOW.**

3. *Flebāt ut minus lātē vagārentur, it happened THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT less extensively.*

4. *Retinēri nōn poterant quā tēla conicerent, they could not be prevented FROM HURLING weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Militēs numerō¹ tam multī erant, ut āgminī² novissimō māgnō praesidiō³ essent.* 2. *Hīs rēbus⁴ flebat⁵ ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent.* 3. *Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tam barbarum esse, ut nōn sciret bellō⁶ Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium nōn tulisse.* 4. *Tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs⁷ animōsque perturbāret.* 5. *Mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut⁸ facile perpaucī prohibēre possent.* 6. *Divicō respondit: Ita⁹ Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institūtōs esse,¹⁰ utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuerint.*¹¹ 7. *Ita diēs¹² circiter quīndecim iter fecērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum¹³ sex mīlia passuum interessent.* 8. *Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi¹⁴ spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus¹⁵ nōn vidērētur.* 9. *Germānī retinēri nōn poterant quā in nostrōs tēla coniicerent.*

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled. 2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee. 3. We are so many in number¹ that we can easily keep their¹⁷ army from the march.¹⁶ 4. For these reasons⁴ it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.¹⁶ 5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors. 6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.¹³

7. This man assumes¹⁸ such lofty airs that he does not seem endurable.¹⁵ 8. The lieutenant assumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.¹⁵ 9. The Romans could not be prevented from making¹⁹ war upon their neighbors.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.² See 138.³ Why the *Imperfect*? (135)⁴ *his rēbus*, for these reasons; see 79.⁵ What is the subject of *fiēbat*? ⁶ See 111.⁷ How do *mēns* and *animus* differ in signification? See GEN. VY.⁸ *ut, so that.*⁹ *ita* modifies *Institūtōs esse*.¹⁰ *Institūtōs esse* is object of *respondit*. (52)¹¹ See A. & G. 128, a: A. & S. 228, a, b: B. 116, 1: G. 131, 1: H. 235.¹² See 93.¹³ *primum*, sc. *agmen*; render *van*.¹⁴ See 39.¹⁵ *ferendus*, *endurable*; lit. (*one*) *to be endured*.¹⁶ See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.¹⁷ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.¹⁸ *to assume, sibi sūmere.*¹⁹ See EXAMPLE 4.

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. 218: A. & S. 359: B. 204, 1-3: G. 374: H. 399, I., 1-3.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. 214, c: A. & S. 357: B. 198, 3: G. 366: H. 401.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. 219: A. & S. 365: B. 205; 206: G. 376: H. 406, II.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Qui rei (140) militāris peritissimus habēbātur, who was considered very skilful IN military SCIENCE.*

2. *Bellandī (140) cupidī, desirous OF CARRYING ON WAR.*

3. **Iūdicium imperātōris (141) est, the decision is THE GENERAL'S; or, belongs TO THE GENERAL.**
4. **Gallia est populi (141) Rōmānī, Gaul belongs TO THE Roman PEOPLE.**
5. **Reminiscātur pristinae virtūtis (142) Helvētiōrum, let him recollect THE former VALOR of the Helvetii.**
6. **Veteris contumēliae (142) obliviscī vult, he is willing to forget THE old INSULT.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus bellī perītus¹ habētur. 2. Lēgātus nītitur ut bellī perītus fiat.² 3. Nītēbātur ut rei militāris perītissimus fieret.³ 4. Pūblius Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbātur et⁵ in exercitū Lūcī Sullae et postea in Mārcī Crassī⁴ fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur. 5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret⁶ Aeduōs auxiliō⁷ populi Rōmānī nōn ūsōs esse.⁸ 6. Militēs hortābor, ut glōriae semper memorēs sint. 7. Nōs monuit ut virtūtis semper memorēs essēmus. 8. Quā dē causā⁹ hominēs bellandī¹⁰ cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnorigem cupidum novārum rērum. 10. Dīcunt dē summā bellī¹¹ iūdicium imperātōris esse¹² sē exīstimāvisse.¹² 11. Neque iūdicat Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. 12. Militum est fortiter pūgnāre;¹³ imperātōris est imperāre. 13. Divicō Caesarem hortātur ut reminiscātur et¹⁴ veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 14. Caesar recentium iniuriarum obliviscī nōn vult.¹⁵ 15. Omnis contumēliae obliviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I am not considered very skilful in war.¹⁶ 2. I shall strive to become² skilful in war. 3. This lieu-

tenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers. 4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.¹⁶ 5. The decision concerning the general management¹¹ of affairs belongs¹⁷ to the consul. 6. This house is Caesar's. 7. We ought to forget insults.¹⁸ 8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 64.² See 126 and 136.³ Why Imperfect? (135)⁴ in *Mārci Crassi*, sc. *exercitū*; translate, in that of *Marcus Crassus*.⁵ et connects *habēbātur* and *fuērat*. ⁶ See 139 and Ex. 2.⁷ See 104.⁸ *hīs esse* depends upon *sciret*.⁹ *quā dē causā*, for this reason.¹⁰ *bellandī* is a Gerund; parse it like a noun.¹¹ *dē summā belli*, concerning the general management of the war.¹² *essa* depends upon *existimāvisse*; *existimāvisse* upon *dīcunt*.¹³ See 129.¹⁴ See LN. LXI., NOTE 3.¹⁵ See 125.¹⁶ See 140.¹⁷ See Ex. 3.¹⁸ See 142.

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. 304-308: A. & S. 476, a, b; 477: B. 301-304: G. 589; 590; 594-597: H. 506; 507, I.-III.; 508-510.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Sī vincit, laetātur*, if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.
2. *Sī vincet, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall conquer), he will rejoice.
3. *Sī vicerit, laetābitur*, if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will rejoice.
4. *Sī vincat, laetētur*, if he should conquer, he would rejoice.

5. *Sī vinceret, laetārētur, if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*
 6. *Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset, if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Sī pūgnat, vincit.* 2. *Sī pūgnābit, vincet.* 3. *Sī pūgnāverit, vincet.* 4. *Sī pūgnēt, vincat.* 5. *Sī pūgnāret, vinceret.* 6. *Sī pūgnāvisset, vīcisset.* 7. *Sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus¹ satisfacient, cum iīs pācem faciam.* 8. *Sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, cum iīs pācem faciam.* 9. *Caesar dīcit sī Helvētiī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.²* 10. *Sī quid³ vultis,¹⁰ revertiminī.⁴* 11. *Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt¹¹ Helvētiī ubi eōs esse volueris.⁵* 12. *Sīn bellō⁶ persequī⁷ persevērābis,⁸ reminiscere⁴ et veteris incommodī⁹ populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.* 13. *Sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellem,¹⁰ num¹² etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriā dēpōnere⁷ possem?* 14. *Sī id fiet, prōvinciae¹³ periculōsum erit.* 15. *Caesar dīcit sī nēmō¹⁴ sequatur, sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum esse.¹¹*

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,¹ he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,³ ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish⁵ us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing⁸ us with war,⁶ let them recall to mind¹⁵ our former valor.⁹ 9. If we were willing to

forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

Notes and Questions.

- ¹ See 132.
- ² esse factūrum = factūrum esse.
- ³ See 116 and Ex. 6.
- ⁴ See 47.
- ⁵ What does the Future Perfect Tense denote? (42)
- ⁶ See 54.
- ⁷ See 69.
- ⁸ persequi perseverō, I persist in pursuing.
- ⁹ See 142.
- ¹⁰ See 125.
- ¹¹ See 126.
- ¹² What answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.
- ¹³ See 86.
- ¹⁴ The Genitive and Ablative of nēmō are rare : these cases are supplied by nullius and nullō (from nullus, 24).
- ¹⁵ See 134.



LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144. Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference. A. & G. 250: A. & S. 415: B. 223: G. 403: H. 423.

144, a. Ablative of Quality. A. & G. 251: A. & S. 411: B. 224: G. 400: H. 419, II. This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic*, sometimes *the Descriptive Ablative*.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Alterum iter multō (144) expeditius erat, the other route was MUCH more passable.**
2. **Mātūrius paulō (144) domum contendit, he hastens home A LITTLE sooner.**
3. **Ipsūm Dumnorigem, summā audaciā (144, a), Dumnorix himself, (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.**
4. **Summā hūmānitātē (144, a) adolēscēns, a youth OF THE HIGHEST CULTURE.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multō gravius queritur.¹ 2. Multō māior alacritās exercituī² iniecta est. 3. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram erat, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fuit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte³ duōbus māximīs bellīs⁴ cōfectīs mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in⁵ Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. 5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant,⁶ facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.⁷ 6. Reliquum spatium mōns continet māgnā altitudīne, ita, ut radicēs⁸ mōntis ex utrāque parte⁹ rīpae¹⁰ flūminis contingant.¹¹ 7. Galli ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs,¹² incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse¹³ praedicābant. 8. Commodissimū vīsum est¹⁴ Gāium Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adolēscētem, ad eum mittere. 9. Reperit ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audaciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitatem grātiā, cupidum¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ novārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among⁵ the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed¹⁴ most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

Notes.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| ¹ See 103. | ² See 67. |
| ³ See 111. | ⁴ See 122. |
| ⁵ in, among. | ⁶ cōstituerant, sc. facere. |
| ⁷ ut — exeat is an appositive to id; for the mood, see 139; translate, to go forth. | |
| ⁸ See 34. | ⁹ ex utrāque parte, on each side. |
| ¹⁰ See 32. | ¹¹ See 139. |
| ¹² See 53. | ¹³ See 52. |
| ¹⁴ What is the subject of visum est? (129) | |
| ¹⁵ See 64. | ¹⁶ See 140. |



LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. 313, a-e: A. & S. 478-480; 510 (2): B. 306, 1-5: G. 603-607: H. 514; 515, I.-III.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cum pugnātum sit, *although they fought*; lit., *it was fought*.
2. Licet victōriā glōriētur, *although he glories in victory*.
3. Quamvis careret nōmine, *although he was without the name*.
4. Etsi vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat, *although he saw, yet he did not think*.

Analyze and parse.

1. Cum fortiter pūgnent, tamen nōn vincent. 2. Cum Sēquanī Rōmānīs¹ satisfēcērint, tamen lēgātus pācem cum iīs nōn facit. 3. Cum ea² ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur,³ cum iīs pācem faciat.³ 4. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁴ cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,⁵ āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. 5. Licet⁶ mē hortētur, nōn pūgnābō. 6. Licet miles volnerātus sit, tamen laetātur. 7. Licet Helvētiī suā victōriā⁷

glōrientur, tamen iter facient nōn per nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignitāte⁸ rēgiā, quamvis careret nōmine.⁹ 9. Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen eō¹⁰ exercitum addūxit. 10. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis¹¹ dēlectae cum equitatū proelium fore¹² vidēbat, tamen committendum¹³ nōn putābat. 11. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, uti inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis¹⁴ aut sēnis mīlibus¹⁵ passuum interesset.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer. 2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with them. 3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they fought from the fifth hour till sunset. 4. We cannot see the mountain, although it is of great height.⁸ 5. The lieutenant did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the summer was almost gone. 6. He thinks that he ought to begin¹³ battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to the legions.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 132.

² See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

³ See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional clause? (143)

⁴ See 111.

⁵ See Ex. 1.

⁶ *Heet* is properly an Impersonal Verb (128), Present Tense, with *ut* (*that*) omitted; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive. (135) What is the literal translation?

⁷ See 79.

⁸ See 144, a.

⁹ See Ex. 3.

¹⁰ *eō*, *thither*.

¹¹ A. & G. 217: A. & S. 353 (2): B. 200: G. 363, 2: H. 396, III.

¹² *fore* = *futūrum esse*. (62)

¹³ *committendum*, sc. *esse*; see 130.

¹⁴ *quīnis*, etc., *than five*, etc., *each day*.

¹⁵ See 133.

¹⁶ See 139.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252: A. & S. 408: B. 225: G. 404: H. 422. This answers such questions as *For how much?* *At what price?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, b: A. & S. 423, b: G. 335, 2: H. 379, 2. This answers the question *How far?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, a: A. & S. 418: B. 226, 2: G. 374, NOTES 1-4: H. 421, III.

EXAMPLES.

1. Domum duobus talentis (146) emit, he bought a house FOR TWO TALENTS.
2. Oppidum parvo pretio (146) vendidit, he sold the town AT A SMALL PRICE.
3. Milibus (147) passuum quattuor et viginti absunt, they are TWENTY-FOUR MILES distant.
4. Dignus est maioribus (148), he is worthy OF (his) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic¹ mercēde puerōs et puellās docet. 2. Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocratēs vendidit. 3. Vendidit hic aurō patriam. 4. Victōria nobis² multō sanguine stetit.³ 5. Vereor nē victōria iis multō sanguine stet.⁴ 6. Cum Rōmānī vicerint,⁵ tamen victōria iis multō sanguine stetit. 7. Septimō diē ab exploratoribus certior factus⁶ est Ariovisti cōpiās⁷ ā nostris⁸ milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.⁹ 8. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. 9. Legionem Caesar, quam equis¹⁰ devēxerat, passibus ducentis

ab eō tumulō cōstituit. 10. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt.¹¹ 11. Eōdem diē castra prēmōvit et milibus pāssuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub mōnte cōsēdit. 12. Hī puerī patribus indignī sunt. 13. Hic imperātor immortalitāte dignus est. 14. Licet¹² hī militēs fortissimī sint, tamen māiōribus indignī sunt. 15. Puerum hortēmur ut māiōribus dignus sit.¹³ 16. Nulla vox est ab iis audita populī Rōmānī māiestāte et superiōribus victōriis indigna.

Write in Latin.

1. This man¹ will teach for wages. 2. I shall sell my house at a small price. 3. He is by no means rich, although he sells⁵ houses at a large price. 4. I fear that I shall not sell⁴ my house at a large price. 5. We are about fifteen miles from the city. 6. We shall station the third legion three hundred paces from the hill. 7. He will station his cavalry at nearly an equal distance from the same place. 8. We shall move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva. 9. I fear that these girls are not worthy of their mother. 10. Let us urge the soldiers to be¹³ worthy of their country.

Notes.

¹ See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.

² See 39.

³ See GEN. VY. under *stō*.

⁴ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

⁵ See 145.

⁶ See LN. LXVIII., EX. 2.

⁷ See 53.

⁸ Sc. *cōpils*.

⁹ *abesse* depends upon the idea of saying contained in *ab* — *factus est*, *he was informed by scouts that, etc.*, i. e. who said that, etc.

¹⁰ *equis*, on horseback; see 54.

¹¹ See *cōsistō*, GEN. VY.

¹² See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.

¹³ See 136.

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, a, b, c; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) b; 510 (2); 519: B. 285; 286, 1-3: G. 538-541; 586; 633: H. 516, I., II.; 517.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cum impetūs sustinēre nōn possent, alterī sē in mōntem recēpērunt, *since they could not withstand the attacks, one party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. Caesar iniūriam faciēbat quī vēctīgālia dēteriōra faceret, *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues decrease.*
3. Aedui questī sunt quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur, *the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*
4. Quod ā Bibracte aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit, *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfacile est, cum virtūte¹ omnibus praestētis, tōtīus Galliae imperiō² potiri.³ 2. Orgētorix dixit perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri. 3. Cum māgnā ex parte⁴ eōrum precibus⁵ adductus bellum suscēperit, queritur. 4. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci. 5. Diūtius⁶ cum nostrōrum⁷ impetūs sustinēre nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant,⁸ in mōntem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. 6. In finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt cum propter volnera militum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequi nōn potuissent. 7. Ariovistus dixit māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī

suō adventū vēctīgālīa dēteriōra⁹ faceret. 8. Graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iis nōn sublevētur. 9. Multō¹⁰ etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur. 10. Propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septemtriōnibus posita est,¹¹ frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. 11. Eō autem frūmentō,² quod¹² flūmine Arare nāvibus¹³ subvēxerat, proptereā minus ūtī¹⁴ poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōssimō, nōn amplius mīlibus¹⁶ passuum octōdecim aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum¹⁷ exīstimāvit: iter ab Helvētīis āvertit ac Bibracte¹⁸ ire contendit.

Write in Latin.

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight more bravely than the Gauls¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks. 4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy, one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great. 8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we are not more than twenty miles distant.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See 124.

² See 129.

³ See 79.

⁴ See 104.

⁵ *māgnā ex parte, in great part.*

⁶ *Diūtius* modifies *sustinēre*.

⁷ The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used substantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.

- ⁸ What kind of a verb is *cooperant*? (127)
⁹ See Ex. 2. ¹⁰ See 144.
¹¹ Of what does *quod* — *posita est* express the cause?
¹² See 115 and 34. ¹³ See 54.
¹⁴ See 69. ¹⁵ See 125.
¹⁶ See 133. ¹⁷ See Ex. 4.
¹⁸ See 105. ¹⁹ *Than the Gauls, quam Galli.*
²⁰ See 146. ²¹ See 111.



LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. 323; 325; 327; 328: A. & S. 502; 503; 505; 509, a: B. 287; 288, A, B; 291; 292: G. 568-572; 574; 577; 578; 579: H. 519, I., II., 1, 2; 520, I., 1, 2, II.; 521, I., II., 1, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Cum lēgātī mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvīt, when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*
2. *Priusquam quidquam cōnārētur Divitiacum vocat,¹ before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*
3. *Dum haec geruntur Caesarī nūtiātum est, while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*
4. *Nōn expectandum sibi statuit dum pervenirent, he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī⁸ potitī sunt.* 2. *Cum triduī viam⁴ prōcessisset, nūtiātum est⁵ ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis contendere.* 3. *Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō⁶ exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā,⁷ Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat.* 4. *Cum²⁰ hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū⁸ pulsa⁹ atque*

in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum⁸ nostram aciem premēbant. 5. Itaque priusquam quidquam cōnārētur Divitiacum ad sē vocārī iubet.¹ 6. Postquam id animum advertit cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit. 7. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs, arma, servōs¹⁰ poposcit. 8. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,¹¹ Caesarī nūntiātum est⁵ equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque¹² in nostrōs conicere. 9. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quōs¹³ imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēlībērandum¹⁴ sumptūrum.¹⁵ 10. Quibus¹⁶ rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum¹⁷ sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis¹⁸ sociōrum cōsumptis, in Santonōs Helvētiū pervenirent.

Write in Latin.

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded corn of them.¹⁹ 2. When they had proceeded a three days' march,⁴ they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons, and¹⁰ horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting. 7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble. 8. Influenced by these¹⁶ affairs, we decided that we ought¹⁷ not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 276, d: A. & S. 466: B. 259, 3: G. 229: H. 467, III.

² See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

³ See LN. LXXXI., NOTE 7.

⁴ See 109.

⁵ What is the subject of nūntiātum est? (129)

⁶ See 107.⁷ See 111.⁸ *ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing.* ⁹ *pulsa, sc. esset.*

¹⁰ When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either *obsidēs, arma, servōs*; or *obsidēs et arma et servōs*; NOT *obsidēs, arma et servōs*.

¹¹ A. & G. 276, *c* : A. & S. 468 : B. 293, I. : G. 229, REMARK : H. 467, III., 4.

¹² An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : *tālāque*.

¹³ *Sc. convenire.*¹⁴ *ad dēliberandum, for deliberating.*¹⁵ *sūmptūrum, sc. esse.*

¹⁶ The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : *quæ rēs, THESE affairs.*

¹⁷ *expectandum, sc. esse.* See 130 and 131.¹⁸ See 129.¹⁹ See 71 and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.²⁰ See 145.

LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. 334, w. preceding NOTE : A. & S. 518 : B. 300 : G. 452, 2; 467 : H. 528, 2, NOTE; 529, I.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quid suī cōnsilii¹ sit ostendit, he shows what his plan is.*
2. *Causa quæ esset quaesivit, he asked what the cause was.*
3. *Arionistō mirum vīsum est quid in Galliā Caesarī negotiū¹ esset, Arionistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. *Quālis esset nātūra mōntis, qui² cōgnōscerent,³ mīsit.* 2. *Dīcit intelligere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcērit.* 3. *Ex quō iūdicārī potest,⁴ quantum habeat in sē boni¹ cōstantia.* 4. *Dumnorigi custōdēs pōnit,⁵ ut, quæ agat, quibuscum⁶ loquātur, scīre possit.* 5. *Ario-*

vistus dīxit sibi mīrum vidēri,⁷ quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō⁸ vīcisset,⁹ aut Caesarī¹⁰ aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō¹⁰ negōtī¹ esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem¹¹ fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. 7. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem¹² facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat¹³ praemittit, quī videant,³ quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 8. Caesar vehementer eōs incūsāvit quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō¹⁴ dūcerentur,¹⁵ sibi quaerendum¹⁶ aut cōgitandum putārent.¹⁷ 9. Caesar dīxit dē quartā vigiliā sē castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor valēret. 10. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō⁸ nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam.

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed.
2. We shall send (men) to ascertain⁸ in what direction the river flows.
3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows.
4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled.
5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think¹⁷ they ought to ask¹⁶ in what direction they are to be led.
6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly.
7. We shall place guards over him,⁵ that we may know with⁶ whom he speaks.
8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *quid sui cōsiliī, what his plan; lit., what of his plan.* See A. & G. 216: A. & S. 354: B. 201: G. 367; 369: H. 396, IV.

² *qui, sc. virōs as antecedent.* ³ See 136 and Ex. 10.

⁴ What is the subject of *potest*?

⁵ *Dumnaorigī — pōnit, he places guards over (lit. for) Dumaorig.*

⁶ See LN. LIX., NOTE 1.

⁷ *sibi — vidēri, he wondered; lit., it seemed to him wonderful; for sibi, see 39.*

⁸ *bellō, in war; see 54.*

⁹ *vidisset, translate by the Indicative.*

¹⁰ See 137.

¹¹ *in utram partem, in which direction.*

¹² How does *idem* differ in meaning from *Idem*?

¹³ *colectum habēbat, he had collected.* A. & G. 292, c: A. & S. 547, c: B. 337, 6: G. 238: H. 388, 1, NOTE.

¹⁴ See 79.

¹⁵ *dūcerentur, they were to be led.*

¹⁶ *quaerendum, sc. esse: see 130.*

¹⁷ See 149 and Ex. 3.



LESSON LXXXIV.

ŌRATIŌ OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. 335, REM.; 336; 339: A. & S. 515; 516: B. 313; 314: G. 648-650: H. 522; 523, I., II., 1, 2, III.; 524.

EXAMPLE.

Ōrātiō Rēcta, Direct Discourse.

Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte profūgī et Rōmam vēnī, quod neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

I fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *I* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua, Indirect Discourse.

Locūtus est Divitiacus: ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam vēnisse, quod neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Divitiacus said: he fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *he* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

Analyze and parse.

1. Divicō respondit : Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere,¹ nōn dare cōnsuerint²; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. 2. Lēgātī dixerunt sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. 3. Locūtus est prō hīs Divitiacus Aeduus : Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās : hārum³ alterius⁴ principātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. 4. Dixit hōrum⁵ primō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsisse : posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās⁶ Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs⁶ plūrēs :¹¹ nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. 5. Dixit cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs⁷ contendisse ; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs⁸ accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum⁹ amīsisse. 6. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rerū⁸ facere, quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite¹⁰ dēmīssō terram intuērī.

Notes.

¹ See 69.² See 139 and LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.⁴ *alterius* modifies *factiōnis* understood.⁵ *cōpiās*, *wealth*.⁶ See 54.⁷ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 10.¹¹ *plūs* is declined as follows :⁶ *trāductōs*, sc. *esse*.⁸ See *pellō*.¹⁰ See 129.

| | N. | | M. and F. | N. |
|-------|---------------------|-------|-----------|-----------|
| SING. | <i>Nom.</i> plūs, | PLUR. | plūrēs, | plūra, |
| | <i>Gen.</i> plūris, | | plūrium, | plūrium, |
| | <i>Dat.</i> ——— | | plūribus, | plūribus, |
| | <i>Acc.</i> plūs, | | plūrēs, | plūra, |
| | <i>Abl.</i> ——— | | plūribus, | plūribus. |

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.

SI
pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiis **faciet**, in eam partem
ibunt atque ibi **erunt** Helvē-
tiī, ubi eōs **tū** cōstitu-
eris atque esse volueris; sīn
bellō persequi perseverābis, re-
miniscere et veteris incom-
modi populī Rōmānī et pristinae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

If the Roman people
shall make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **will** go
into that part and stay where
you shall have determined and
wished that they should be;
but if **you shall** persist in
continuing war, recollect the
old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Indirect Discourse.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: SI
pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiis **faceret**, in eam partem
itūrōs atque ibi **futūrōs** Helvē-
tiōs, ubi eōs **Caesar** cōstitu-
isset atque esse volu**isset**; sīn
bellō persequi perseverāret, re-
miniscerētur et veteris incom-
modi populī Rōmānī et pristinae
virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

*He treated with Caesar as fol-
lows:* If the Roman people
should make peace with the
Helvetii, the Helvetii **would** go
into that part and stay where
Caesar should have determined
and wished that they should be;
but if **he should** persist in con-
tinuing war, **let him** recollect
the old misfortune of the Roman
people and former valor of the
Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa¹ praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum
sēsē nōn suā sponte,² sed rogātum³ et arcessitum³ ā
Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis⁴ domum
propinquōsque reliquisse: sēdēs habēre⁵ in Galliā ab

ipsīs⁶ concessās,⁷ obsidēs ipsōrum⁷ voluntāte² datōs; stipendium capere⁵ iūre⁸ bellī, quod⁹ victōrēs victīs¹⁰ impōnere cōnsuērint.¹¹ 2. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō¹² sibi minus dubitātiōnis¹³ darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent,¹¹ memoriā¹⁴ tenēret, atque eō¹⁵ gravius ferre, quō¹⁵ minus meritō⁸ populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī¹⁶ alicūius iniūriā¹⁷ sibi¹⁸ cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre¹⁹; sed eō¹² dēceptum,²⁰ quod neque commīssum²¹ ā sē intelligeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum²² putāret.

Notes.

¹ A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (3): B. 236: G. 204, NOTE 2: H. 441.

² See 79.

³ See 121 and Exs. 3 and 4.

⁴ Translate as if *spē māgnōrum praeimiōrum*. See A. & G. p. 428, Hendiadys: B. 374, 4: G. 698: H. 636, III., 2.

⁵ *habēre, capere*, sc. *sē*.

⁶ *ipsīs*, sc. *Gallis*.

⁷ *concessās*, from *concedō*; *ipsōrum*, *their own*.

⁸ The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with which* anything is done: *iūre*, *in accordance with the law*.

⁹ See 115.

¹⁰ A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (2): B. 236: G. 204, NOTE 2: H. 441, 1; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns. For the *case of victis*, see 67.

¹¹ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

¹² *eō*, *for this reason*.

¹³ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

¹⁴ See 54.

¹⁵ See GEN. VY. under *eō*.

¹⁶ *quī sī*, *if they*.

¹⁷ See 140.

¹⁸ See 86; translate, *on their part*.

¹⁹ See 129.

²⁰ *dēceptum*, sc. *esse sē*.

²¹ *commīssum*, sc. *esse aliquid*.

²² *timendum*, sc. *sibi esse*, and see 130.

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.

I. Moods.

1. Principal Clauses : Statements.

| DIRECT DISCOURSE. | | INDIRECT DISCOURSE. |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------------------|
| <i>Indicative</i> | becomes | <i>Infinitive</i> . |

2. Principal Clauses : Commands or Prohibitions.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------|----------------------|
| <i>Imperative</i> | becomes | <i>Subjunctive</i> . |
| <i>Subjunctive</i> | remains | <i>Subjunctive</i> . |

3. Subordinate Clauses of All Kinds.

| | | |
|------------------------------|---------|----------------------|
| <i>Indicative</i> | becomes | <i>Subjunctive</i> . |
| <i>Subjunctive</i> | remains | <i>Subjunctive</i> . |

II. Tenses.

1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> } | become | { <i>Present</i> , often <i>Imperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Imperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Present</i> , when made dependent upon an Historical Tense. |
| <i>Future</i> } | | |
| <i>Perfect</i> } | become | { <i>Perfect</i> , often <i>Pluperfect</i> , when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; <i>Pluperfect</i> , sometimes <i>Perfect</i> , after an Historical Tense. |
| <i>Future-Perfect</i> } | | |
| <i>Imperfect</i> | remains | <i>Imperfect</i> . |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> | remains | <i>Pluperfect</i> . |

2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse passes into an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> | remains | <i>Present</i> . |
| <i>Future</i> or <i>Future-Perfect</i> | becomes | <i>Future Participle</i> with <i>esse</i> . |
| <i>Perfect</i> } | become | <i>Perfect</i> . |
| <i>Imperfect</i> } | | |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> } | | |

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies: The Romans have been so trained up by their fathers that they do not give¹ hostages. 2. He informs Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many² (things): (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because³ we had been invited³ by the Sequani; we did not set out from home⁴ without great rewards; we have among the Helvētī large possessions, granted to us with their own⁵ consent;⁶ we levied tribute on the conquered⁷ in accordance with the law⁸ of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind; that you had been deceived for this reason,⁹ that¹⁰ you had neither done anything for which¹¹ you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear¹² without a reason.

Notes.

¹ See 139.² See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.³ See 121 and Ex. 3.⁴ See 107.⁵ *their own, ipsōrum.*⁶ See 79.⁷ See 67 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.⁸ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.⁹ *for this reason, eō.*¹⁰ *that, quod.*¹¹ *for which, quārē.*¹² See 130 and 131.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. 295: A. & S. 548 (1): B. 338, 1-4: G. 425; 426: H. 541; 542, I-IV.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit**, *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.
2. **Bellandī cupidī**, *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.
3. **Diem ad dēliberandum sūmet**, *he will take a day for* DELIBERATING.
4. **Reperiēbat in quaerendō**, *he found on* INQUIRING.
5. **Studium pugnandī**, *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.¹

1. Quā dē causā hominēs bellandī² cupidī māgnō dolōre³ afficiēbantur. 2. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent,⁴ comparāre. 3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum.⁵ 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium ēius fugae factum⁵ ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitibus. 5. Caesar Divitiacum cōsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat.⁶ 6. Ariovistus, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret,⁷ liberālitate⁸ senātus ea praemia cōsecūtus est. 7. Caesar loquendī finem facit sēque ad suōs⁹ recipit, suisque imperāvit nē quod¹⁰ omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. 8. Multō¹¹ māior alacritās studiumque pugnandī māius exercituī iniectum est. 9. Proximō diē Caesar aciem instrūxit hostibusque¹² pugnandī potestātem fēcit.¹³ 10. Ita nostrī⁹ ācritē in hostēs signō¹⁴ datō

impetum fecerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur.¹⁶

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war. 2. We shall take ten days for deliberating. 3. We shall ask them to make⁶ an end of entreating. 4. A much greater desire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.¹⁶ 5. They gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them. 6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace and friendship with us. 7. You will find on inquiring (that) we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns. 8. They said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep the enemy from their cities. 9. We made an end of speaking and betook ourselves to our (friends). 10. Although we had no just cause for asking, we obtained many things¹⁷ by reason of your generosity.⁸

Notes.

¹ Parse the Gerunds like nouns. ² See 140.

³ A. & G. 248, R.; A. & S. 410 (1); B. 220, 1; G. 399; H. 419, III.

⁴ A. & G. 320; A. & S. 500 (2), (d); B. 283; G. 631; H. 503, I.

⁵ esse is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

⁶ See 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3; ut, as here, is sometimes omitted.

⁷ See 145.

⁹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

¹¹ See 144.

¹³ See EXAMPLE 1.

¹⁵ See 139.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

⁸ See 79.

¹⁰ See 116, second part.

¹² See 39.

¹⁴ See 122 and Ex. 2, b.

¹⁶ all of us, omnibus nobis; see 67.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive. A. & G. 296: A. & S. 548 (2); 550: B. 339: G. 427: H. 543, and NOTE; 544.

EXAMPLES.

1. Ad minuendam grātiām, *for DIMINISHING popularity.*
2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, *Orgetorix is chosen to EXECUTE these plans.*
3. Spem rēgnī obtinendī, *the hope OF OBTAINING the sovereignty.*
4. Datā facultāte itineris faciendī, *if an opportunity for marching should be granted.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quibus opibus¹ ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam² grātiām,³ sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur.⁴ 2. Ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est. 3. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. 4. In Galliā ab his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, regna occupabantur. 5. Ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important. 6. Decima legio se esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. 7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venire. 8. Frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant,⁵ comburunt, ut domum⁶ reditionis spe⁷ sublata⁸ paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent. 9. Liscus dicit si quid accidat⁹ Romanis, summam in spem¹⁰ per Helvetios regni obtinendi Dumnorigem venire. 10. Hac oratione habitā¹¹ summa alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est. 11. Neque homines inimico animo,¹² data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos¹³ ab iniuria et

maleficiō exīstimāvit. 12. Hōc proeliō factō reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset,¹⁴ pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrat¹⁵ atque ita exercitum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city. 3. We entertain¹⁰ the highest hope of establishing friendship with all. 4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls, if anything happens⁹ to us. 5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans. 6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix. 7. Let us not import¹⁶ those things which tend to enervate the mind. 8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace with all men. 9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come to attack him. 10. We shall burn up our villages, that we may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

¹ See 104.

² Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like adjectives.

³ grātiam, sc. suam.

⁴ ūterētur, translate by the Indicative.

⁵ See LN. LXX., Ex. 2.

⁶ See 105; domum limits the idea of motion in the verbal noun reditiōnis.

⁷ See 122.

⁸ From tollō.

⁹ accidat, translate by the Indicative; why is it in the Subjunctive? (152).

¹⁰ in spem veniō, I entertain the hope.

¹¹ See LN. LXIV., NOTE 2.

¹² See 144, a.

¹³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

¹⁴ See 136.

¹⁵ pōntem — cūrat, he attends to building a bridge over the Saône; lit., he cares for a bridge to be built, etc. How is Saône pronounced?

¹⁶ See 134.

LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155.—*The Supine.* A. & G. 302; 303: A. & S. 554 (2); 555: B. 340, 1, 2: G. 434–436: H. 546–547.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, they send legates to*
ASK FOR aid.
2. *Perfacile factū, very easy* TO DO.

Analyze and parse.

1. Aeduī cum sē suaque¹ ab iis dēfendere nōn possent,² lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 2. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs³ cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt. 3. Lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēvirīs veniēbant; Aeduī⁴ questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trāsportātī essent,⁵ finēs eōrum populārentur²; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse. 4. Divitiacus dīxit ob eam rem sē ex cīvitate profūgissee et Rōmam⁶ ad senātum vēnissee auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre-iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnorigem ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātē⁷ et propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs conlocāssee. 6. Hostis⁸ est uxor invīta⁹ quae ad virum nūptum datur. 7. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvītātis imperium obtentūrus esset.¹⁰

Write in Latin.

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops.
2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid.

3. Since we cannot² defend ourselves and our possessions¹¹ from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva⁶ to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed² the Rhine to attack¹² their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge¹³ had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

Notes.

¹ See A. & G. 19, c: A. & S. 35: B. 6, 3: G. 15, REMARK 1: H. 18, 2, 1).

² See 149.

³ See 25.

⁴ Aedui, sc. veniebant.

⁵ See A. & G. 342: A. & S. 523: B. 324: G. 663: H. 529, II.

⁶ See 105.

⁷ sorōrem ex matre, his half-sister. ⁸ See 64.

⁹ invita, against her will; it modifies quae.

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and 149.

¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See 155.

¹³ See 122.



LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, 376, a-d: A. & S. 660 (1)-(4), a, b, NOTES 1, 2, (5), a: B. 371, 1-6: G. APPENDIX, page 491: H. 641-645.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. 80, a-d: A. & S. 666, d: B. 373: G. Appendix, page 493: H. 649-650.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Iānuārius, -a, -um, (Iān.) | <i>of January.</i> |
| Februārius, -a, -um, (Febr.) | <i>of February.</i> |
| Mārtius, -a, -um, (Mart.) | <i>of March.</i> |
| Aprīlis, -e, (Apr.) | <i>of April.</i> |
| Māius, -a, -um, (Māi.) | <i>of May.</i> |
| Iūnius, -a, -um, (Iūn.) | <i>of June.</i> |
| Quīntilis, -e, (Quint.) | <i>of July.</i> |
| Sextilis, -e, (Sext.) | <i>of August.</i> |
| September, -bris, -bre, (Sept.) | <i>of September.</i> |
| Octōber, -bris, -bre, (Oct.) | <i>of October.</i> |
| November, -bris, -bre, (Nov.) | <i>of November.</i> |
| December, -bris, -bre, (Dec.) | <i>of December.</i> |
| Kalendae, -ārum, (Kal.) f. pl., | <i>Calends, the first day of the Roman month.</i> |
| Nōnae, -ārum, (Nōn.) f. pl. | <i>Nones; the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.</i> |
| Idūs, -uum, (Id.) f. pl., | <i>Ides; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.</i> |
| prīdiē, (pr. or prīd.) adv., | <i>the day before.</i> |

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Genāvam Kalendīs¹ ipsīs Novembribus² occupābit.
2. Quī diēs erit a. d. VI. Kal. Nov.³ (ante diem sextum Kalendās Novembrēs).
3. C.⁴ Iūlius Caesar Idibus Mār-
tiis occīsus est.
4. M. Tullius Cicerō a. d. III. Nōn. Iān.
nātus est.
5. P. Scīpiō a. d. XVII. Kal. Māi. mortuus
est.
6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. in senātū locū-
tus est.
7. Tl. Gracchus Nōnīs Iūniīs Rōmā⁵ profectus
est.
8. M. Mānilius ad Rōmam profectus est a. d. VI.
Id. Sext.
9. Multa verba ōrātōres faciunt a. d. IV. Nōn.
Quīnt.
10. C. Caesar prīd. Nōn.⁶ Febr. castra mōvit.
11. Dixi ego in senātū caedem tē contulisse⁷ prīncipum
in a. d. V. Kal. Nov.
12. Caedem prīncipum contulisti

ex a. d. V. Kal. Dec. ad pr. Kal.⁶ Iān. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Īd.⁸ Sept. hostēs superavit. 14. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.⁸ 15. Sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmō quī nēsciat⁹ tē prīd. Kal.⁶ Iān. stetisse in comitiō cum tēlō.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Gaius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will break up camp on the 12th of February. 6. Lucius Piso was elected on the 1st of December. 7. That day was the 16th of April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were consuls.⁸ 8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June. 9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of November. 10. There was no one of these who did not know⁹ that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

¹ See 111.

² The Latin names of months are adjectives.

³ Such an expression as *ante diem sextum Kalendās Novembrēs* is treated as a *single word*; hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time, as in sentence 4; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2; or it is governed by the prepositions *in*, *ex*, and rarely by *ad*, as in sentences 11 and 12.

⁴ *Gāius*: Latin pronunciation *Gāh-yoos*; English pronunciation, *Gá-yus*.

⁵ See 107.

⁶ See A. & G. 261, a: A. & S. 660 (4), b, NOTE 1: H. 437, 1.

⁷ From *cōnferō*.

⁸ See 122.

⁹ A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, a: B. 283: G. 631: H. 503, 1.

LESSON XCI.*

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *primā lūce, at daybreak, at earliest dawn.*
2. *multō diē, late in the day.*
3. *primā nocte, in the first part of the night.*
4. *ad multam noctem, till late at night.*
5. *prīdiē eius diēi, on the day before.*
6. *postrīdiē eius diēi, on the following day.*

Translate and parse.

1. *Primā lūce,*¹ *cum summus mōns ā T. Labiēnō tenērētur,*² *ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus*³ *abesset, Cōnsidius equō*⁴ *admīssō ad eum accurrit, dīcit mōntem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,*⁵ *ab hostibus tenērī. 2. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et mōntem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse.*⁶ 3. *Circiter hominum*⁷ *mīlia sex primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant. 5. Conloquendī*⁸ *Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō*⁹ *magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi*¹⁰ *Germānī retinērī nōn poterant, quīn*¹¹ *in nostrōs tēla conicerent.*¹¹ 6. *Postrīdiē eius diēi*¹⁰ *praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus*¹² *passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidium utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit.*

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lesson from Eutropius on page 174 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,¹³ and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We staid at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference⁸ does not seem good to us, and the more⁹ because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling¹¹ missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the literal meaning of *primā luce*? Why is the Ablative used?

² Why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 288, B: G. 585: H. 521, II., 2.

³ See 133.

⁴ See 129; what is the literal meaning of *equō admissō*?

⁵ What mood is *voluerit*? Why is that mood used in this clause? See 152.

⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. ⁸ See 153.

⁹ *et magis*, the more; for *et*, see 79.

¹⁰ See A. & G. 214, *g* on p. 208: A. & S. 355, *b*: B. 201, 3, *a*: H. 398, 5.

¹¹ *quā* — *conicerent*, from *hurling*; why is the Imperfect used? See 135; why is the Subjunctive used? See A. & G. 319, *d*: A. & S. 493, (2): B. 284, 3: G. 555: H. 504.

¹² See 147.

¹³ *at full speed*, *equis admissis*; why the Plural?

LESSON XCII.*

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. *plūs posse, to be more powerful.*
2. *plūrimum posse, to be the most powerful, or to be very powerful.*
3. *eī grātiās agere, to thank him.*
4. *nōbīs est in animō iter facere, we intend to march.*
5. *latere apertō, on the unprotected flank.*
6. *ex equīs, on horseback.*
7. *memoriā tenēre, to remember.*
8. *māximīs potest itineribus, by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dicit esse nōnnūllōs, quī prīvātīm plūs¹ possint² quam ipsī magistrātūs. 2. Nōn erat dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum¹ Helvētīi possent.³ 3. Dumno-rix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. 4. Divitiacus dixit eōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitīō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent,² coāctōs esse⁴ Sēquanīs⁵ obsidēs dare. 5. Decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit. 6. Caesarī renūntiātur⁶ Helvētīs⁷ esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere. 7. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad eum mittunt⁸ quī dicerent⁹ sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere. 8. Pars apertō latere¹⁰ legiōnēs circumvenire coepit.¹¹ 9. Captō mōnte¹² Boiī et Tulingī nostrōs latere apertō aggressī circumvenire coepērunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur¹³ et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad conloquium addūcerent¹³ postulāvit.

* NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — The Lessons from Eutropius on pages 175 and 176 may be taken as a substitute for this Lesson, if preferred.

11. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,¹⁴ attingit ab¹⁵ Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id¹⁶ hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur. 13. Mōribus¹⁷ suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis¹⁸ causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum¹⁹ poenam sequī oportēbat,²⁰ ut ignī cremārētur. 14. Caesar, quod memoriā²¹ tenēbat²² L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum²³ et sub iugum mīssum,²⁴ concēdendum²⁴ nōn putābat. 15. Caesarī cum id²⁵ nūntiātum esset,²⁶ eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī,²⁷ mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī et quam māximīs potest itineribus²¹ in Galliam ūteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. 16. Itaque rē¹² frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dicit Dumnorigem complūrēs annōs²⁸ portōria reliquaue²⁹ omnia Aeduōrum vētīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre,³⁰ propterea quod illō¹² licente contrā licērī audeat³¹ nēmō.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See A. & G. 240, a : A. & S. 397 : B. 176, 2, b : G. 333, 1 : H. 378.

² Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause ? See 152.

³ Why the Subjunctive ? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

⁴ From cōgō.

⁵ See 39.

⁶ What is the subject of *renūntiātur* ? What is it that *is reported to Caesar* ?

⁷ See 137 ; what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do* ? What then is the subject of *esse* ?

⁸ See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

⁹ See 136 and Ex. 10 ; what question does *quī dīcerent* answer ?

¹⁰ *latere* is an Ablative of *Place*, answering the question *Where* ?

¹¹ What kind of a verb is *coepit* ? See 127.

¹² See 122.

¹³ See 136 and Ex. 9.

¹⁴ What is the subject of *dictum est* ?

¹⁵ *ab*, on the side of.

¹⁶ *id* — *quod*, *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because* ; lit., *he persuaded this to them*, etc. ; for *hōc*, see 79.

¹⁷ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 8.

¹⁸ *ex vinculis*, *in chains* ; what is its literal meaning ?

¹⁹ *damnātum*, *if condemned* ; see 121 ; it modifies *eum* understood, the object of *sequi*.

²⁰ What kind of a verb is *oportēbat* ? See 128 ; what is its subject ? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

²¹ See 54.

²² What kind of a clause is *quod* — *tenēbat* ? See 149 ; what is the object of *tenēbat* ?

²³ See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

²⁴ *concōdendum*, sc. *esse* ; translate, *that it ought to be granted*.

²⁵ To what does *id* refer ? What *had been reported* to Caesar ?

²⁶ See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.

²⁷ *cōnārī* is in apposition with *id*.

²⁸ See 93.

²⁹ See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

³⁰ *redēpta habēre*, *had bought up*.

³¹ What kind of a verb is *audet* ? See A. & G. 136 : A. & S. 196, a : B. 114 : G. 167, 1 : H. 268, 3.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvus laqueis inrētītus mūsculum exōrāvit, ut eum, corrōsis plagis, liberāret. Quō factō, milvus liberātus mūrem adripuit et dēvorāvit.

Haec fābula ostendit, quam grātiam malī prō beneficiis reddere soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stāns in tēctō domūs, lupō praetereuntī maledīxit. Cui lupus, *Nōn tū, inquit, sed tēctum mihi maledīxit.*

Saepe locus et tempus hominēs timidōs audācēs reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pāvō, cōram grue pennās suās explicāns, *Quanta est, inquit, fōrmōsitās mea et tua dēfōrmitās!* At grūs ēvolāns, *Et quanta est, inquit, levitās mea et tua tarditās!*

Monet haec fābula, nē ob aliquod bonum, quod nōbīs nātūra tribuit, aliōs contemnāmus, quibus nātūra alia et fōrtasse māiōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōspicātus, *Cūr nōn*, inquit, *relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca, et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum offerunt?* Cui respondit capra: *Mihi nōn est in animō dulcia tūtis praepōnere.*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis iacēbat in praesēpī bovēsque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, *Quanta ista*, inquit, *invidia est, quod nōn pateris ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse capere nec velis nec possis!*

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Volpēs, quae numquam leōnem viderat, cum eī fōrte occurrisset, ita est perterrita, ut paene morerētur formīdine. Eundem cōspicāta iterum, timuit quidem, sed nēquāquam, ut antea. Tertiō illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius accēdere eumque adloquī.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in māximā concordīā, et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tūti erant. Sed dissidiō inter illōs ortō, singulī ā feris petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī sit in concordīā.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asinus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat hominēs et bēstiās tamquam leō esset. Sed fōrte, dum sē celerius movet, aurēs ēminēbant; unde āgnitus in pīstrīnum abductus est, ubi poenās petulantiae dedit.

Haec fābula stolidōs notat, quī immeritis honōribus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cottidiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam auri massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliīs gallīnis reperīrī solet. Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitiīs inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo quī ūnā iter faciēbant, asinum oberrantem in sōlitudine cōspicātī, accurrunt laetī, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior cōspēxisset. Dum vērō contendunt et rīxantur, nec ā verberibus abstinēt, asinus aufugit et neuter eō potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, *Nē mē, inquit, interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.* At hostēs, *Propter hōc ipsum,* inquiunt, *tē interimemus, quod, cum ipse pūgnandī sis imperītus, aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs.*

Fābula docet, nōn solum maleficōs esse pūniendōs sed etiam eōs, quī aliōs ad male faciendum inrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Volpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī eam fōrte attingere posset. Tandem dēfatigāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit: *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās tollerem.*

Haec fābula docet, multōs ea contemnere, quae sē adsequi posse dēspērent.

13. The Mice.

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modo sibi ā fēle cavērent. Multis aliis prōpositis, omnibus placuit ut ei tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mūrēs quaererētur, quī fēli tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet, in suādendō plūrimōs esse audācēs, sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur cōducit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc grūs longitudine collī facile effēcit. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et dentibus infrendēns, *Num tibi, inquit, parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupi faucibus extrāxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antīquissimīs temporibus Sātūrnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dīcitur. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque Sātūrniam appellāvit. Hīc Italōs primus agricultūram docuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Posteā Latīnus in illis regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae filius, cum multīs Trōiānīs, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufūgit et in Ītaliā pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx ei benīgnē receptō filiam Lāvīniam in mātīmōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam in honōrem coniugis Lāvīnium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascānius, Aenēae filius, rēgnū accēpit. Hīc sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in mōnte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam nūcupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortem ā Lāvīniā genitus erat. Eius posterī omnēs usque ad Rōmam conditam Albae rēgnāvērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Ūnus hōrum rēgum, Rōmulus Silvius, sē Iove māiōrem esse dīcēbat, et, cum tonāret, mīlitibus imperāvit, ut clipeōs hastīs percuterent, dīcēbatque hunc sonum

multō clārīorem esse quam tonitrū. Fulmine ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū, Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre vellet, an bona, quāe pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidiās interēmit et filiam frātris Rheam Silviam Vestālem virginem fēcit. Nam his Vestae sacerdotibus nōn licet virō nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs filiōs Rōmulum et Remum peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius comperisset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit.

7. Fōrte Tiberis aqua ūltrā ripam sē effūderat, et cum puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō reliquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus suis aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illius regiōnis, puerōs sustulit et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent et fōrte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae mātēr fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in mōnte Aventīnō quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus circumdārētur, Remus occīsus est, dum frātrem inrīdēns moenia trānsiliēbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asyllum patefecit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suis pulsī accurrerunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deerant. Fēstum itaque Neptūnī et lūdōs instituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex finitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et liberīs vēnissent, Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuerunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpela.

10. Populī illī, quōrum virginēs raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōrēs suscepērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent, fōrte in Tarpēiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra prēcūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret, eiūque permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret. Illa petiit, ut sibi darent, quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, ānulōs aureōs et armillās significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perductī scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī mōntem Tarpēium tenēbat, pūgnam cōnseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc forūm Rōmānum est. In mediā caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant, ut caedis finem facerent. Utrique hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus icit et Sabinōs in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12. Postea cīvitātem dēscripsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iīs

dēbitam patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque raptārum nōminibus nūcupāvit. Annō rēgnī tricēsimō septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculis hominum subductus est. Hinc alii eum ā senātōribus interfectum, alii ad deōs sublātum esse existimāvērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius.

13. Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Quō ēlapsō, Numa Pompilius Curibus, urbe in agrō Sabīnōrum, nātus rēx creātus est. Hīc vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen civitātī prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima instituit, ut populī barbarī et bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret. Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, iūssū facere dicēbat. Morbō dēcessit, quadrāgēsimō tertio imperī annō.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cūius avus sē in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnum virum praestīterat. Rēx creātus bellum Albānīs indīxit, idque trigeminōrum Horātiōrum et Curiātiōrum certāmine finīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettī Fufētī diruit. Cum trīgintā duōbus annīs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hīc vir aequitāte et religiōne avō

similis, Latīnōs bellō domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova eī moenia circumdedit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vicēsimō quartō annō imperī morbō obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus.

16. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit, Dēmarātī filius, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam profectus erat. Advenientī aquila pilleum abstulit, et, postquam altē ēvolāverat, reposuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniūnx, mulier auguriōrum perītā, rēgnum eī portendī intellēxit.

17. Cum Rōmæ commorārētur, Ancī rēgis familiāritatem cōsecūtus est, quī eum filiōrum suōrum tūtōrem reliquit. Sed is pūpillis rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī minōrum gentium sunt appellātī. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs hostibus adēptōs urbis territōriō adiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit; Capitōlium incohāvit. Tricēsimo octāvō imperī annō per Ancī filiōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex nōbili fēminā, captīvā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquinī Priscī educārētur, flamma in ēius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil eī summam dignitatem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sicutī liberōs suōs educāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx eī filiam in mātrimonium dedit.

19. Cum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum adlocūta est, dicēns; *rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle volnus accēpisse; eum petere, ut populus dum convaluisset, Serviō Tulliō oboediret.* Sic Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Mōntēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēsum ordināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant.

20. Hīc rēx interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et Tarquini Superbi, filiī eius rēgis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus, cum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem salūtāvit. Cum domum rediret, aurīgam super patris corpus in viā iacēns carpentum agere iussit.

Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cōgnōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis in Capitoliō aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppugnābat, urbem Latī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius eius Lucrētiaē, nōbilissimae feminae, coniugī Tarquini Collātini, vim fēcisset, haec sē ipsam occidit in cōspectū mariti, patris, et amicōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta fuerat, ut hanc iniūriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātinus, aliique nōnnūlli in exitium rēgis, coniūrārunt, populōque persuāsērunt, ut ei portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī civitatem Ardeam cum rēge oppugnābat,

eum reliquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre et liberis suis. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

[Adapted from Eutropius.¹]

1. Caesar's Conquests in Northern Europe.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XXXVI.

Annō urbis conditae² (*founded*) sēscentēsīmō nōnā-gēsīmō tertiō³ (*six hundred ninety-third*) Gāius Iūlius⁴ Caesar, quī postea imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul est factus⁵ (*elected*). Dēcrēta (*granted*) est⁶ ei (*to him*) Gallia⁷ et Illyricum,⁷ cum legiōnibus decem (*ten*). Is primō vicit (*conquered*) Helvētiōs, quī nunc⁸ Sēquanī appellantur. Deinde (*then*) vincendō (*by conquering*) per bella multa usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit (*advanced*). Domuit (*he subdued*) autem annīs⁹ novem (*nine*) fere omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Britannīs¹⁰ mox (*afterward*) bellum intulit (*he brought upon*), et eōs (*them*) quoque victōs (*when conquered*) stipendiāriōs fēcit (*he made*). Deinde Germānōs trāns Rhēnum multīs proeliis vicit.

N.B. For all words not translated or found in previous vocabularies, see the General Vocabulary.

Grammar Lesson.

Learn the grammar references under 79 and 80 of *this book* and the Examples in Lesson XXXVI.

Write in Latin.

1. Who was Gaius Julius Caesar? Gaius Julius Caesar was a Roman general. 2. The soldiers of Caesar rejoiced in their victory.¹¹ 3. Caesar urges his soldiers to fight¹² with the enemy. 4. If Caesar had not been a great general, he would not have conquered¹³ all Gaul. 5. The Rhine is broad and the Alps are high.¹⁴

2. Caesar's Return to Italy.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XLIV.

Caesar rediēns (*returning*) ex Galliā victor, coepit (*began*) poscere alterum cōsulātum (*consulate*). Contrādictum est (*This was opposed*) ā Marcellō Cōs.,¹ ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque² (*and he was ordered*) dīmīssīs exercitibus³ ad urbem redīre (*to return*). Propter quam⁴ iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs congregātōs (*assembled*) habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū (*army*) vēnit (*came*). Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō, senātusque omnis atque ūniversa (*all*) nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit (*fled*), et in Graeciam trānsiit (*passed over*); apud (*in*) Epīrum, Macedoniam, Achāiam, Pompēiō duce,⁵ senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit (*made ready for*).

Write in Latin.

Caesar came as a victor from Gaul to Ariminum,⁶ where after delaying (*morātus*) a few days⁷ he asked⁸ (his) country for the consulate. This was opposed by Marcellus and other friends of Pompey, who ordered⁹ Caesar to return to the city of Rome. On account of this insult Caesar led (*dūxit*) his soldiers against Pompey, who (*quī*), with his friends, fled to Macedonia, where he afterwards fought with Caesar.

3. Events Preceding the Battle of Pharsalia.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson LIV.

Caesar vacuum urbem ingressus dictatōrem sē (*himself*) fēcit. Inde Hispāniās¹ petiit. Ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus (*three*) ducibus Lūciō Afrāniō, Mārcō Petrēiō, Mārcō Varrōne superāvit. Inde regressus, in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum Pompēium dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus; ēvāsit tamen quia nocte interveniente (*during the intervening night*) Pompēius sequī² nōluit; dīxitque Caesar, nōn Pompēium scīre vincere, et illō diē sē potuisse superārī.

Write in Latin.

Caesar entered Rome³ and got possession of the city. Then he went from Rome⁴ to Spain, where he fought many battles with the brave leaders of the armies of Pompey. Having returned thence he was elected consul at Rome.⁵ In the next year he crossed over into Greece, where Pompey had collected a large army. In the first battle Pompey conquered Caesar and put him (*eum*) to flight, but did not follow him and subdue him.

4. The Battle of Pharsalia, and Death of Pompey.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson LXII.

Deinde in Thessaliā apud Palaepharsālum dīmīcāvērunt. Pompēi aciēs habuit quadrāgintā¹ mīlia peditum, equitēs in sinistrō cornū sēscentōs,² in dextrō quīngentōs;³ praetereā (*moreover*) tōtius Orientis auxilia, tōtam nōbilitātem, multōs senātōrēs, praetōriōs, cōsulārēs, et³ quī māgnōrum iam populōrum⁴ victōrēs fuissent. Caesar

in aciē suā habuit peditum nōn integra⁵ trīgintā milia,² equitēs mille.³ Pūgnātum est ingentī contentiōne, victusque ad postrēmum⁶ Pompēius et castra ēius dērepta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriam petiit ut ā rēge Aegyptī auxilia acciperet, quī fōrtūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus, occīdit Pompēium; caput ēius et ānulum Caesarī misit.

Write in Latin.

A battle between Caesar and Pompey was fought near Palaepharsalus in Thessaly. Pompey had many thousand foot soldiers and eleven hundred cavalry men with all the nobility and many senators and men of consular rank. Caesar had about thirty thousand soldiers, but they fought bravely and conquered the forces of Pompey. Pompey afterward fled⁷ to Egypt and was killed by the king.

5. Caesar's Alexandrian War.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XCI.

Mox Caesar Alexandriam¹ vēnit. Ipsī quoque Ptolemaeus parāre voluit insidiās; quā causā rēgi bellum inlātum est. Victus in Nīlō periit, inventumque est corpus ēius cum lōricā aureā. Caesar Alexandriā⁴ potītus, rēgnum Cleopatrae, Ptolemaei sorōri, dedit. Rediēns⁵ inde Caesar Pharnacem, Mithridātis Māgnī filium, quī Pompēiō in⁶ auxilium apud Thessaliam fuerat, rebellantem in Pontō, atque multās populī Rōmāni prōvinciās occupantem, aciē vīcit.

Write in Latin.

After the death of Pompey, Caesar went to Alexandria⁷ where he conquered Ptolemy, king of Egypt. Ptolemy

perished in the Nile, and Caesar, having got possession of Alexandria, made Cleopatra, sister of Ptolemy, queen (*rēginam*) of Egypt. Caesar afterward went to Pontus and made war against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates the Great, who had been a friend of Pompey and at that time was an enemy of the Roman people.

6. The African and Spanish Wars.

To be taken as a substitute for Lesson XCII.

Inde Rōmam regressus, tertiō sē cōsulem fēcit cum M. Aemiliō Lepidō, quī eī² dictātōrī³ magister equitum ante annum⁴ fuerat. Inde in Āfricam profectus est, ubi cum Iubā, Maurītāniae rēge, et multis et⁵ nōnobilibus Rōmānīs bellum gessit. In quō bellō, post multa proelia, victor fuit Caesar.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus, quartō sē cōsulem fēcit, et statim ad Hispāniās⁶ profectus est; ubi Pompēi filii, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum reparāverant. Multa proelia fuērunt; ūltimum apud Mundam, in quō adeō Caesar paene victus est, ut, fugientibus suis, sē voluerit occidere. Dēnique reparātis suis vicit; ex Pompēi filiis māior occisus est, minor fūgit.

Write in Latin.

In the next year, Caesar was made consul for the third time with M. Aemilius Lepidus. When he was informed⁷ (that) King Juba with many Romans had prepared to wage war with him, he advanced into Africa with all his forces and put his enemies to flight.⁹

Having returned from Africa to Rome he was chosen consul for the fourth time and immediately set out for

the Spains, where he conquered the two sons of Pompey in a battle near Munda. If he had not conquered¹⁰ in this battle, he would have slain himself.

6. (Continued.) The Last Days and Death of Caesar.

Inde Caesar, bellis cīvilibus tōtō orbe compositis, Rōmam rediit; agere insolentius coepit, et contrā cōsuetudinē Rōmānae libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte praestāret,¹ quī ā populō ante dēferēbantur, nec senātūī ad sē venientī adsurgeret, aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica faceret, coniūrātum est² in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānīs. Praecipuī fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī prīmus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat. Ergō Caesar, cum senātus diē inter cēterōs vēnisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōfossus est.

EXERCISE.

Change the passage given above into Indirect Discourse, depending upon *Entropius scripsit*. See Lessons LXXXIV.-LXXXVI.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. *ut* — *liberāret*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — *corrōsis plagis*, by gnawing the nets; see 122. — *quō*, see 122; what is its antecedent? — *ostendit*, what is its object? — *malī*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *soleant*, see 151 and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. *lupō*, see 132. — *praetereuntī* (*praeter* and *eō*), see 126; translate the Participle by a Relative Clause. — *inquit*, see A. & G. 144, *b*: A. & S. 249 (5): B. 134: G. 175, 2: H. 297, II., 2. — *reddīt*, see A. & G. 205, *b*: A. & S. 320: G. 285, EXCEPTION 2: H. 463, II., 2.

3. *explicāns*, *spreading*. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *ali-quod*, see 116, *a*. — *quod*, see 34 and 115. — *contemnāmus*, see 136. — *alia, maiōra*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. *laetum*, *abundant*. — *mihi*, see 137. — *est*, what is its subject? — *dulcia*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — *tūtis*, see 67.

5. *bovēs*, see A. & G. 61: A. & S. 110, *bōs*: B. 41: G. 52, 7: H. 66. — *litrandō*, see 153 and 54. — *quod* — *pateris*, see 149. — *cibō*, see 54 and 104. — *vallis*, see 125 and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *occurrisset*, see A. & G. 325: A. & S. 509, *a*: B. 288, 1, B: G. 585: H. 521, II. 2. — *morestūr*, see 139. — *nūquāquam*, *anteā*, what do they modify? — *obviam facta*, *having met*; *obviam* is used with the Dative. — *ausa est*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. *pāscēbantur*, what does the Imperfect Tense denote? See 36. — *bovēs*, see note on *bovēs*, Fable 5. — *petitī*, sc. *sunt*. — *bonī*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *sit*, see 151.

8. *pelle*, see 54. — *indūtus*, *having clothed himself*. — *esset*, see A. & G. 312: A. & S. 481, (2): B. 307: G. 602: H. 513, II. — *movet*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — *unde*, *for which reason*, i. e. because his ears stuck out. — *agnitus*, from *agnōscō*; render as if it were *agnitus est*, and supply *and*. — *dedit*, *suffered*. — *honōribus*, see 79.

9. *suspiciārī*, see 69. — *coepit*, see 127. — *illam*, why in the Accusative? why Feminine? — *quod* is here equivalent to *id quod*; compare the English *what*, equivalent to *that which*. — *solet*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *maiōribus*, see 54 and 85. — *divitīs*, see 67. — *minōrēs*, what does it modify?

10. *duo*, see 108 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — *accurrunt*, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — *laetī*, *joyfully*; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557, *h*: B. 239: G. 325, REMARK 6: H. 443. — *prior*, see note on *laetī*; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — *cōnspēxisset*, see 149. *eō*, see 104.

11. *tubicen*, what is the derivation? See GEN. VY. — *inquit*, see note on *inquit*, Fable 2. — *interficiēte*, see 47. — *inermis*, derivation? See GEN. VY. — *propter hōc ipsum*, *for this very reason*; what is the reason? — *pugnandī*, see 153 and 140. — *sīs*, see 145. — *solēs*, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — *esse pūniendōs*, see 130. — *eōs*, why in the Accusative? — *inritent*, see A. & G. 320: A. & S. 500, (2), (*d*): B. 283: G. 631: H. 500. I.

12. *volpēs*, see A. & G. 30, *b*: A. & S. 94: B. 15, B., NOTE 2: G. 21, 3: H. 43, 3. — *omnium* — *contentiōne*, with all its might; what is the literal translation? For the Abl. *contentiōne*, see 54. — *Si*, (to see) whether. — *posset*, see 151. — *repartis*, from *reperiō*; see 121. — *tollerem*, see 143 and A. & G. 310, *a*: A. & S. 477, *c*: B. 305: G. 593, 2: H. 507, NOTE 7. — *quae*, see 34. — *es*, see 53. — *dēspērent*, see note on *irritant*, Fable 11.

13. *quō modo*, (to see) by what means. — *sibi*, see A. & G. 227, *c*: A. & S. 378: B. 187, II., *a*: G. 346: H. 385, 1. — *cavērent*, see 151. — *aliis*, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1 and 122. — *placuit*, what is its subject? — *adnectorētur*, see A. & G. 332, *a*: A. & S. 494, *a*: B. 284: G. 557: H. 501, I., 1. — *sic* — *posse*; this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as *they thought, they said*. — *quaererētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6; what is the subject of *quaererētur*? — *suādendō*, see 153. — *plūrimōs*, see 85 and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.

14. *inhaeserat*, from *inhaerēō*. — *mercēde*, see 146. — *extrahat*, see 136. — *hōc*, what was *this* that the crane accomplished? — *postulāret*, see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *num*, what answer is implied? See LN. LXI., NOTE 1. — *mercēs*, see 64. — *vidētur*, what is its subject? — *fanci-bus*, how declined in the Singular? in the Plural? See GEN. VY.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. *Iāniculō*, the *Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber; the seven hills are on the east side; these are the *Palatine*, *Capitoline*, *Quirinal*, *Aventine*, *Coelian*, *Esquiline*, and *Viminal*. — *eam Sātūrniam*, see 58. — *Italōs*, *agricultūram*, see 71. — *primus* — *docuit*, was the first who taught; see A. & G. 191: A. & S. 557 *h*: B. 239: G. 325, 7: H. 442, NOTE.

2. *in* — *regionibus*; what country is meant? — *sub*, in the reign of. — *Trōia*, *Troy* is said to have been destroyed in B. C. 1184. — *hinc*, from this place, i. e. from *Troy*. — *Aenēae*, *Anchisae*, how declined? See A. & G. 37: A. & S. 94: B. 22: G. 65: H. 50. — *quibus*, see 132. — *Lāvinium* was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles from the coast.

3. *Aenēae*, see note on *Aenēae* in preceding section. — *trānstulit*, see 123. — *Albam Longam*, *Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking

the Alban Lake. — *secutus est*, *succeeded*. — *genitus erat*, from *gignō*. — *ad Rōmam conditam*, *until the founding of Rome*; what is the literal translation? — *Albae*, see 106.

4. *Iove*, see 133 and A. & G. 60, b, page 32: A. & S. III, (3): B. 41: H. 66, 3. — *tonāret*, see 128 and note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *multō*, see 144. — *tonitrū*, what case? why? — *ictus*, sc. *est*. — *Albānum Lacum*, see note on *Albam Longam* in section 3.

5. *minor nātū* = *junior*; for *nātū*, see 124. — *vellet*, see 125 and 151. *reliquisset*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. *vestālem virginem*, *a vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — *licet*, what is its subject? — *virō nūbere*, *to marry*; for *virō*, see 132; what does *nūbere* mean? — *peperit*, from *pariō*. — *hōc*, what was it that Amulius had found out?

7. *essent positi*, see A. & G. 326: A. & S. 510 (2): B. 286, 2: G. 586: H. 517. — *quod*, what is its antecedent? what did a certain *Faustus* see? — *regiōis*, what *region* is meant? — *nūtriendōs*, *to be nourished*, modifies, *puerōs*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*.

8. *adolēvissent*, from *adolēscō*; see note on *occurrisset*, Fable 6. — *quis*, see 64. — *avus*, sc. *fuisse* and see 151. — *mōnte Aventinō*, *Mount Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. *divibus*, see A. & G. 231, a: A. & S. 390: B. 188, 2, d: H. 386. — *inter*, *in the midst of*. — *ipsōs*, *very*. — *spectantēs*, translate by a relative clause.

10. *Rōmae*, see 67. — *in* — *incidērunt*, *they came unexpectedly upon*. — *quod*, see note on *quod*, Fable 9. — *gererent*, see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — *et ea*, *these also*, i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. *Mōntem Tarpēium*, *the Tarpeian mount*; probably the Capitoline hill. — *forum Rōmānum*, *the Roman Forum*, an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings; here the Roman people, *the Populus Romanus*, met to transact business. — *mediā*, *midst of*. — *raptas*, sc. *mulierēs*. — *hinc* — *hinc*, *here* — *there*. — *utrique*, who are meant? — *Icit*, compare the English expression, *strike a bargain*; the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of *icō*.

12. *cum* — *tum*, *both* — *and*. — *raptarum*, sc. *mulierum*. — *inter*, *in the midst of*. — *ortam*, *which had arisen*. — *oculis*, see 67. — *hinc*, i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — *alii* — *alii*, *some* — *others*. — *interfectum*, sc. *esse*. — *sublātum esse*, from *tollō*.

13. *quō*, what is its antecedent? — *Curibus*, see 106. — *iussū*, see 79. *facere*, what is its object? — *morbō dēcessit*, i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings; with *dēcessit* supply *dō vitā*.

14. *praestiterat*, what does it govern? See 58. — *creātus*, see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — *Horātiōrum*. The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived; this gave the victory to the Romans. — *Metti Fufētī*, see 17; for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill; this was the origin of the Roman *Plēbs*. — *annis* expresses *duration of time*; what is the more usual construction? See 93. — *arsit*, fr. *ārdeō*, *ārdere*, *ārui*, *ārsum*, *burn*.

15. *aequitātē*, see 124. — *avō*, see 86. — *bellō*, see 54. — *ei*, see A. & G. 225, *d*: A. & S. 379: B. 188: G. 348: H. 384, II., 2. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *obiit*, see 126 and note on *morbō dēcessit*, section 13.

16. *deinde*, i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — *quī* refers to *Dēmarātī*. — *advenientī*, sc. *ei* and see A. & G. 229: A. & S. 380: B. 188, 2, *d*: H. 386, 2. — *abstulit*, from *aufērō*, *auferre*, *abstuli*, *ablātum*, *carry off*: derived from *ab* *away, off*; and *ferō* *carry*. — *auguriōrum*, see 140.

17. *Rōmae*, see 106. — *commorārētur*, see note on *occurrisset*, Table 6. — *tūtōrem*, as *guardian*; compare 58. — *pūpillis*, see 67. — *gentium* modifies *senātōrēs* understood. — *plūra*, *several*; how declined? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11. — *adēptās*, from *adimō*. — *primus*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *Cloacās*. The main *sewer*, known as the *Cloaca Maxima*, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — *Capitōlium*, the *Capitol*, signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — *per filiōs*, at the instigation of the sons; they hired assassins to murder him: *ā filiis* would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — *quibus*, see note on *ei*, section 16.

18. *genitus*, from *gignō*. — *captiva*, see 25. — *domō*, how declined? See 97. — *coningī*, see 132 and Ex. 1. — *ēducāret*, see 136.

19. *domus*; this stood on the Palatine. — *rēgem* — *obedīret*; change this to the Direct Discourse; see 152. — *eum* refers to *rēgem*. — *coepit*, see 127. — *mōntēs* — *adiūnxit*. The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — *mīlia*, how declined? See 108. — *civium*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. *scelere*, see 79. — *filiae*, see 25. — *cūriae*. The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — *domum*, see 105; how declined? — *prīma*, see note on *primus*, section 1. — *rēgem*, as *king*; compare 58.

21. *cōgnōmen*, i. e. *Superbus*, the *Proud*. — *mōribus*, see 79. — *bellō*, see 111. — *plūrēs*, how declined? See note on *plūra*, section 17. — *populōrum*, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — *Templum*. This temple had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see section 17. — *Iovis*, how declined? See note on *Iove*, section 4. — *Lucretiæ*, see 39. — *vim*, how declined? See GEN. VY. — *ut — ulciscerentur*, see 136 and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. *in, for*. — *coniūrārant*, see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — *populō*, see 139. — *ei*, against him; see 39. — *civitātem = urbem*. — *Ardea* was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

III. THE LIFE OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

1. ¹ Eutropius was a Roman historian who lived during the reigns of Constantine the Great, Julian, and Valens, in the fourth century of the Christian era. He wrote '*Breviārium Historiæ Rōmānæ*' ('An Epitome of Roman History'), in ten books. This sketch of Julius Caesar is taken with slight changes from Book VI., Chapters 17-25.

² *conditiæ*, a participial adjective modifying *urbis*; of the founded city = after the city was founded.

³ *sēscentēsimō — tertiō*. The Romans reckoned all dates from the year that the city of Rome was founded, 753 B.C.

⁴ *Iūlius*, see GEN. VY. under *Caesar*.

⁵ *est factus*, was elected; the Perfect, Passive, Third, Singular from the verb *faciō*.

⁶ *Dēcrēta est*, was granted; the Perfect, Passive, Third, Singular from the verb *dēcernō*.

⁷ *Gallia et Illyricum*, subject of *dēcrēta est*, see NOTE on *reddit*, Table 2. *Illyricum*, a country extending along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

⁸ *nunc*, now; i. e., in the time of Eutropius.

⁹ *annis novem*, within nine years.

¹⁰ *Britanni*, indirect object of *intulit*.

¹¹ See 79 and Lesson XXXVI., NOTE 1.

¹² " 80 " " " NOTE 2.

¹³ " 80 " " " NOTE 3.

¹⁴ " 80 " " " NOTE 4.

2. ¹ *Cōs.*, an abbreviation of *cōnsule*, in apposition with *Mārcellō*.

² *iūssusque*, supply *est* with *iūssus*. The form *iūssus est* is Perfect, Indicative, Passive, Third, Singular of the verb *iubeō*. See 94.

³ *dimisit exercitibus, the armies having been disbanded = having disbanded the armies.*

⁴ *quam, the Relative may often be rendered by a Demonstrative. Translate, this.*

⁵ *Pompeius duce, Pompey being leader = with Pompey as leader.*

⁶ *Translate to Ariminum by Ariminum. See 105.*

⁷ *See 93.*

⁸ *See 71.*

⁹ *See Vocabulary to LN. XLIV.*

3. ¹ *Hispaniās, the Spains.* Spain was divided into two parts: *Hispania Citerior*, Spain this side [the river Ebro], and *Hispania Ulterior*, Spain beyond [the Ebro].

² *See 69.*

³ *See 105.*

⁴ *See 107.*

⁵ *See 106.*

4. ¹ *See 108, also LN. LV., Vocabulary, N.B.*

² *Note that the numerals are made emphatic by their position.*

³ *Supply eōs as an antecedent of qui.*

⁴ *populōrum, Genitive depending upon victōrēs.*

⁵ *nōn integra, scarcely.*

⁶ *ad postrēmum, finally.*

⁷ *See GEN. VY.*

5. ¹ *Alexandriam, see 105.*

² *Insidiās, plural in form, but singular in meaning. Translate, plot.*

³ *quā, the Relative may often be rendered by a Demonstrative.*

Translate, this.

⁴ *Alexandria, see 104.*

⁵ *Rediēs, Present Participle of redeō.*

⁶ *in with the Accusative is here used in place of a second Dative.*

See 138.

⁷ *See NOTE 1.*

6. ¹ *tertiō, for the third time.*

² *ei, see 137.*

³ *dictātōri, see 25.*

⁴ *ante annum, the year before.*

⁵ *et, see LN. VI., NOTE 3.*

⁶ *Hispaniās, see Chapter 3, of 'The Life of C. Julius Caesar,' NOTE 1.*

⁷ *See 150.*

⁸ *See 152.*

⁹ *Translate put — to flight by one word. See GEN. VY.*

¹⁰ *See LN. LXXVII., Ex. 6.*

6 (*con.*). ¹ *praestāret, assumed.*

² *confirātum est, the impersonal construction is more frequently used in Latin than in English. Translate, a conspiracy was made.*

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xiv.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *from, away from; by; on the side of.*

ab-dūcō, -*dūcere*, -*dūxī*, -*duc-tum* (ab away, *dūcō* lead), lead away. ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.

ab-iciō (or -*iciō*) -*icere*, -*icī*, -*iectum* (ab away, down; *iaciō* cast), cast away or down.

abstineō, -*tinēre*, -*tinuī*, -*ten-tum* (ab(s) from, *tenē* keep), keep from, ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.

ab-sum, -*esse*, *āfui* (ab away, *sum* be) be away, be ABSENT, be distant.

ac. See *atque*.

Acca, -*ae*, f., *Acca Larentia*, the wife of *Faustulus*.

accēdō, -*cēdere*, -*cessī*, -*ces-sum* (ad towards, *cēdō* go), go towards, draw near, approach; assault. ACCEDE, ACCESSION.

accidō, -*cidere*, -*cidī* (ad upon, *cadō* fall), fall upon, befall, happen. ACCIDENT.

accipio, -*cipere*, -*cēpi*, -*cep-tum* (ad to one's self, *capiō* take), receive, ACCEPT, take.

accurrō, -*currere*, -*cucurrī* and -*currī*, -*cursum* (ad to, *currō* run), run to, hasten to.

accūsō, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum* (ad to, *causa* a lawsuit), ACCUSE, blame, censure. ACCUSATION.

acer, *ācris*, *ācre*, sharp. ACRID.

acerbus, -a, -um, sour. ACERBITY.

Achāia, -ae, f., a Roman province, including the southern part of ancient Greece.

aciēs, aciēs, f., edge; line, line of battle; army in battle-array. See **agmen**.

acriter, acrius, acerrimē, adv. (*acer sharp*), sharply, fiercely, violently.

ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards; for; near; w. numerals, about; w. names of towns, towards, in or into the vicinity of.

ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad denoting a beginning, **amō, love**), begin to love, acquire a liking for.

ad-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (ad to, beside; **dō put**), ADD.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (ad to, **dūcō lead**), lead to, lead; influence.

ad-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum (ad to, **eō go**), go to. See 126.

ad-eō, adv., so.

ad-ferō, ad-ferre, attulī, ad-lātum (ad to, **ferō bring**), bring to, carry to; offer; carry.

ad-ficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum (ad to, **faciō do**), AFFECT, influence; **māgnō dolore affici**, to be very grievously affected.

ad-imō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum (ad to one's self, **emō take**), take away.

aditus, -ūs, m. (adeō go to), approach, access.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctum (ad to, **iungō join**) join to, join.

ad-loquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum (ad to, **loquor speak**), speak to, address.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ad without additional force, **ministrō serve**), ADMINISTER, manage. ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (ad to, **mittō let go**) allow. ADMIT; give the reins to; **equō admissō**, at full speed. ADMISSION.

ad-moneō, -monēre, -monui, -monitum (ad w. no perceptible additional force, **moneō admonish**), ADMONISH, warn. ADMONITION.

ad-nectō, -nectere, -nēxui, -nēxum (ad to, **nectō tie, fasten**), tie to, fasten to. ANNEX.

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvi, adultum (**adolēō cause to grow up**), grow, increase, grow up. ADULT.

ad-ripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (ad upon, **ripiō seize**), seize upon.

adrogantia, -ae, f. (adrogāns assuming), haughtiness, insolence, ARROGANCE.

ad-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum (ad with no perceptible additional force, **sequor follow**), follow, overtake, obtain.

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-ful (ad near, *sum be*), *be near, be present; assist.*

ad-surgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum (ad w. no perceptible additional force, *surgō rise*), *to rise, stand up.*

adulēscēns, -ntis, adj., *young, youthful.* As a noun m. and f., *a young man or woman.*

ad-venio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum (ad to, *veniō come*), *come to, arrive, come.* ADVENTURE.

adventus, -ūs, m. (*adveniō come to*), *arrival, approach.* ADVENT.

adversus and **adversum**, prep. w. acc., *towards, against.*

advertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (ad towards, *vertō turn*), *turn towards; id animum advertere, to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it.* ADVERT.

aedificium, -i, n. (*aedifio build*), *building, EDIFICE.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*aedēs building for habitation, facio make*), *build.* EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. pl., *a tribe in Central Gaul.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*

Aegyptus, -i, m., *Egypt.*

Aemilius, -i, m. See under **Lepidus.**

Aenēās, -ae, m., *a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.*

aequitās, -ātis, f. (*aequus fair,*

equitable), **EQUITY, justice, moderation.**

aequus, -a, -um, *even, level; EQUAL; like; fair, equitable.*

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aetās, -ātis, f., *age.*

Afrānius, -i, m., *L. Afranius, a friend of Pompey the Great.*

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa, the Roman province of Africa, including the territory of Carthage.*

ager, agrī, m., *field, land; country, territory.*

agger, aggeris, m., *mound; materials for a mound.*

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (ad to, *gradior go*), *go to, approach; go against, attack.* AGGRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

āgmen, āgminis, n. (*agō put in motion*), *army on the march, line of march; [aciēs, army in battle array; exercitus, a disciplined army]; āgmen novissimum, the rear; primum āgmen, the van.*

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum (ad denoting reference, (*g*)*nōscō know*), *recognize; know.*

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *put in motion; lead, drive, conduct; act, do, perform.* ACTION, AGENT.

agrī cultūra, -ae, f. (*ager field, colō cultivate*), **AGRICULTURE.**

alacer, alacris, alacre, *lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.*

alacritās, -ātis, f. (*alacer lively*),

- liveliness, eagerness, zeal.*
ALACRITY.
Alba or **Alba Longa**, the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.
Albānus, -i, m., an *Alban*, an inhabitant of Alba.
Alexandria, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, a city of Africa.
aliquandō, adv. (*aliquis* some one), at some time, once, formerly.
aliquis, indef. pron. [see 116, a], some one, somebody, something, some; any one, anybody, anything, any.
alius, *alia*, *aliud* [see 24], other, another.
Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.
alō, *alere*, *alui*, *alitur*, or *alitur*, *nourish*, *feed*, *support*.
Alpēs, *Alpium*, f. pl., the ALPS.
altē, *altius*, *altissimē* (*altus* high, low), on high, highly; low, lowly.
alter, *altera*, *alterum* [see 24], one of two, the other, the second; *alter* — *alter*, the one — the other.
altitudō, *altitudinis*, f. (*altus* high, deep), height; depth; ALTITUDE.
altus, -a, -um, (*alō* nourish), high, lofty; deep.
amicitia, -ae, f. (*amicus* friendly), friendship.
amicus, -a, -um, (*amō* love), loving, friendly; *amicus*, -i, m., friend. AMICABLE.
ā-mittō, *mittere*, -*misī*, -*missum* (*ab* away, *mittō* let go), lose.
ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*amplus* of large extent), enlarge.
amplius, adv., more, farther.
Amūlius, -i, m., son of *Silvius Procas* and brother of *Numitor*.
an, adv., or.
Anchisēs, -ae, m., a Trojan, the father of *Aenēas*.
Ancus Marcius, -i, m., the fourth king of Rome.
angustiae, -arum, f. pl. (*angustus* narrow), narrow pass, defile; difficulty.
animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (*animus* mind, *advertō* turn towards), notice.
ANIMADVERT, **ANIMADVERSION**.
animal, *animālis*, n., ANIMAL.
animus, -i, m., mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage. [*animus* denotes the human soul, including all its faculties, including *mēns*; *mēns* denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]
annus, -i, m., year. ANNUAL.
ante, prep. w. acc., before; adv., before, previously. ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.
anteā, adv. (*ante* before, *ea* that), before, previously.
antiquus, -a, -um (*ante* before),

- ancient, old; of long continuance.* **ANTIQUÉ, ANTIQUATED.**
- ānulus, -ī, m., ring.** **ANNULAR.**
- Ap.,** abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.
- apertus, -a, -um (aperiō uncovered), uncovered, unprotected.**
- appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad to, pellō bring one's self to a person), address; name, call.**
- APPEAL, APPELLATION.**
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ad to, propinquō draw near), draw near to, approach.**
- apud, prep. w. acc., at, near, in presence of, among.**
- aqua, -ae, f., water.** **AQUEDUCT.**
- aquila, -ae, f., eagle.**
- Aquillia, -ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.**
- Aquitāni, -ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.**
- Aquitānia, -ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.**
- Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m., the Saône [pronounced Sōne], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.**
- arceō, arcēre, arcui, drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain.**
- arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum, invite, summon.**
- Ardea, -ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutuli.**
- Ariminum, -ī, n., Ariminum, a town in Umbria.**
- Ariovistus, -ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.**
- arma, -ōrum, n. pl., ARMS, weapons.**
- armilla, -ae, f., bracelet or ring, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.**
- Arvernī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.**
- arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress.**
- Ascanius, -ī, m., son of Aeneas.**
- Asia, -ae, f., ASIA.**
- asinus, -ī, m., an ass.**
- asylum, -ī, n., ASYLUM.**
- at, conj., but.**
- atque, ac, conj. (ad in addition, -que and), and also, and.**
- attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum (ad against, tangō touch), touch against, border upon; touch, reach.**
- auctoritās, -ātis, f. (aucter producer), AUTHORITY, influence.**
- audācia, -ae, f. (audāx bold), boldness, AUDACITY.**
- audācter or audāciter, audācius, audācissimē, adv. (audāx bold), boldly, courageously.**
- audāx, gen. audācis (audeō dare), bold, daring, AUDACIOUS.**
- audeō, audēre, ausus sum [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], dare, venture.**
- audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, hear.**
- AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.**
- aufugio, -fugere, -fūgi (ab away, fugiō flee), flee away, escape; flee.**
- augēō, augēre, auxi, auctum, increase, AUGMENT.**

augurium, -i, n. (*augurer* fr. *augur* *diviner*), **AUGURY**, *divination*.

aureus, -a, -um (*aurum* *gold*), *golden*.

auriga, -ae, m. (*aurea* *bridle*, *agō* *manage*), *charioteer*.

auris, *auris*, f. *ear*. **AURI-CULAR**.

aurum, -i, n., *gold*.

aut, conj., *or*; **aut — aut**, *either — or*.

autem, conj., *but, yet, moreover*.

auxilium, -i, n. (*augēō* *increase*), *help, aid*; pl. **AUXILIARIES**.

Aventinus, -i, m., *the Aventine*.

āversus, -a, -um (*āvertō* *turn away*), *turned away*; **āversus hostis**, *a retreating enemy*.

ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (*ab* *away*, *vertō* *turn*), *turn away, turn aside*, **AVERT**. **AVERSION**.

avus, -i, m., *grandfather*.

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign*; *uncivilized*; *savage, rude*, **BARBAROUS**. **BARBARIAN**.

beātus, -a, -um (*beō* *bless*), *happy*. **BEATIFIC**.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*bellum* *war*), *carry on war*.

bellum, -i, n., *war*.

bene, adv., *well, finely*.

beneficium, -i, n., *kindness*, **BENEFIT**. **BENEFICIAL**.

benigns, adv. (*benignus* *kind*), *kindly*; **BENIGNLY**. **BENIGN**, **BENIGNANT**.

bēstia, -ae, f., **BEAST**.

Bibraete, -is, n., *the chief town of the Aedui*.

Bibulus, -i, m. *Lucius Bibulus*, *consul with Caesar*.

biennium, -i, n. (*his* *twice*, *annus* *year*), *two years*. **BIENNIAL**.

Bōii, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Boii* [*pronounced Bō-yi*], *a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good, friendly*; **bonum**, -i, n., *a good thing, an advantage*; **bona**, -ōrum, n. pl., *goods, an estate*.

bōs, *bovis*, m. and f., *ox, cow*.

brevis, *breve*, *short*, **BRIEF**.

Britanni, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain*. **Oceanus Britannicus**, *the English Channel*.

Brūtus, -i, m. (*brūtas* *stupid*), *L. Junius Brutus*, *the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion*.

C.

C., abbreviation of **Gāius** [*pronounced Gā-yus*], *a Roman praenomen*.

caedēs, *caedis*, f. (*caedō* *kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage*.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, cut, cut down; kill, murder. -CIDE in **PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE**, etc.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., Gaius Julius Caesar, a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

calamitās, -ātis, f., CALAMITY, disaster, misfortune.

campus, -i, m., plain, field; Campus, the Campus Martius, a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

canis, canis, m. and f., dog.

capio, capere, cēpi, captum, take, CAPTURE.

Capitōlium, -i, n. (caput head), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; the *Capitoline hill*, including both temple and citadel.

capra, -ae, f., a she-goat.

captivus, -a, -um (capio capture), CAPTIVE; captivus, -i, m., a captive, a prisoner.

caput, capitis, n., head. OCCIPUT.

carcer, carceris, m., prison. INCARCER-ATE.

careō, carere, carui, caritum, be without, lack.

carpentum, -i, n., chariot.

carrus, -i, m., CART, wagon.

cārus, -a, -um, dear, beloved.

Cassius, -i, m., a Roman name.

castellum, -i, n. (castrum a fortified place), CASTLE, fort, stronghold.

Casticus, -i, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., soldiers' huts, camp.

Catō, -ōnis, m., M. Porcius Cato Uticensis.

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, reason, motive; causā, for the sake of, when following a Genitive; causam dicere, to plead one's cause.

caveō, cavere, cāvī, cautum, be on one's guard. CAUTIOUS.

celer, celeris, celere (cēlō impel), swift, speedy. CELERITY.

celeriter, celerius, celerrimē, adv. (celer swift), swiftly, quickly, immediately.

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, CONCEAL, hide.

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (cēnsēō assess, register), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centum, num. adj. indecl., hundred.

certāmen, certāminis, n. (certō contend), contest; battle.

certus, -a, -um (cernō determine), CERTAIN, sure; Caesarem certiorē facere, to inform Caesar.

cēterī, -ae, -a, adj. pl., the rest.

cibus, -i, m., food.

cingō, cingere, cinxi, cinctum, surround, encircle. CINCTURE.

circiter, adv. (*circus circle*), *about, near*.

circum, prep. w. acc. (*circus circle*), *around; near, in the environs of*. **CIRCUM-** is a prefix in many English words; e. g. **CIRCUM-FERENCE**, **CIRCUM-NAVIGATE**.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum (*circum around, dō put*), *put around, surround*.

circum-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum (*circum around, veniō come*), *come around, surround; CIRCUMVENT*.

citerior, **citerius** [see 85], *hither*.

citrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of*.

civilis, -e, adj., *civil*.

civis, **civis**, m. and f., *citizen*. **CIVIL**.

civitās, -ātis, f. (*civis citizen*), *a body of citizens, a state; citizenship*.

clārus, -a, -um, **CLEAR**; *famous*.

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, *close, enclose, shut; āg-men claudere, to bring up the rear*. **IN-CLUDE**, **EX-CLUDE**.

Cleopatra, -ae, f., *Cleopatra, a queen of Egypt*.

cliēns, **clientis**, m. and f. (*cliēs fr. cluēs hear*), **CLIENT**, *vassal*.

clipeus or **clypeus**, -ī, m., *shield*.

cloāca, -ae, f., *drain, sewer; Cloāca mājima, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tarquinius Priscus*.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēemptum

(*eam denoting completeness, emō buy*), *purchase, buy up*.

coepī, **coepisse** [see 127], *have begun, began*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eam denoting completeness, agitō weigh in the mind*), *consider, reflect upon*. **COGITATE**.

cōgnōmen, **cōgnōminis**, n. (*eam denoting similarity, (g)nōmen name*), *a surname*.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum (*eam denoting completeness, (g)nōscō know*), *know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover*. **COGNITION**.

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum** (*eam together, agō drive*), *drive or lead together, collect; compel*. **COGENT**.

cohors, **cohortis**, f., **COHORT**, *the tenth part of a legion*.

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*eam intensive, hortor urge*), *exhort, encourage*.

Collātinus, -ī, m., *cognomen of L. Tarquinius*.

collis, **collis**, m., *a hill*.

collum, -ī, n., *neck*.

colō, **colere**, **colui**, **cultum**, *dwelt; till, CULTIVATE; honor*.

combūrō, -būrere, -būssī, -būstum (*eam denoting completeness, (b)ūrō burn*), *burn up*. **COMBUSTION**.

comitium, -ī, n. (*eam together, eō go*), *the comitium, a place where the Romans assembled to vote*.

commeātus, -ūs, m. (*commeō come and go*), supplies, provisions.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*cum intensive, memorō remind of*), call to mind; relate. **COMMEMORATION**.

com-meō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*cum denoting frequency, meō go*), come and go, resort; *ad Belgās commeāre*, to visit the Belgae.

com-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (*cum together, mittō cause to go*), join; begin; **COMMIT**. **COMMISSION**.

commodē, adv. (*commodus advantageous*), advantageously, fitly, conveniently; *satis commodē*, conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.

commodus, -a, -um (*cum denoting completeness, modus measure*), advantageous, suitable, fit. **COMMODOUS**.

com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum (*cum denoting completeness, moror tarry*), stop; reside, stay at; remain.

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (*cum intensive, moveō move*), move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce. **COMMOTION**.

com-mūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvi and -mūnī, -mūnītum (*cum denoting completeness, mūniō fortify*), fortify on all sides.

commūnis, **commūne** (*cum to-*

gether, munis serving), **COMMON**.

com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*cum intensive, parō prepare*), prepare with zeal, make ready.

com-periō, -perīre, -peri, -pertum, learn, discover.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum (*cum with, plector entwine one's self*), embrace.

complūrēs, **complūra** (rarely **complūria**), gen. **complūrium**, adj. pl. (*cum together, plūrēs several*), several together, very many.

com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, **positum** (*cum together, pōnō put*), settle, arrange.

com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*cum together, portō bring*), bring together, collect. **COMFORT**.

cōnātum, -ī, n. (*cōnor to attempt*), an attempt.

con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (*cum denoting completeness, cēdō yield*), grant; **CONCEDE**. **CONCESSION**.

conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*concilium a calling together*), bring together; win, **CONCILIATE**.

concilium, -ī, n. (*cum together, cālō call*), **COUNCIL**, assembly.

concordia, -ae, f. (*concoro fr. cum denoting similarity, cor heart*), **CONCORD**, harmony.

con-currō, -currere, -cucurri and -curri, -cursum (*cum together, currō run*), rush together; hasten. **CONCURRENT**.

conditiō, conditiōnis, f. (*condō* put together), **CONDITION.**

condō, condere, condidī, conditum (*eum* together, *dō* put), found, build.

con-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum (*eum* together, *dūcō* lead), lead together, collect; hire; **CONDUCE.**

cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātum (*eum* together, *ferō* bring), bring together, collect; put off; **CONFER;** **sē cōn-ferre, to betake one's self.** **CONFERENCE, COLLATE.**

conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*eum* denoting completeness, *faciō* make), execute, accomplish, finish. **CONFECTION.**

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum* denoting completeness, *firmus* firm), establish, strengthen, **CONFIRM;** encourage; assert. **CONFIRMATION.**

cōn-fodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossūm (*eum* denoting completeness, *fodiō* dig, pierce), stab, pierce.

con-iciō (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*eum* intensive, *iaciō* throw), hurl. **CONJECTURE.**

coniūrātiō, -ōrum, m., conspirators.

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f. (*coniūrō* swear together), conspiracy.

con-iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum* together, *iūrō* swear), swear together; conspire. **CONJURE.**

coniūnx or coniux, coniugia, m. and f. (*coniungō* fr. *eum* together, *iungō* join), spouse, husband, wife.

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*eum* denoting completeness, *locō* place), lay, put, place; **nūptum — conlocāre, to give in marriage.** **COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.**

conloquium, -ī, n. (*conloquor* speak together), conference, interview. **COLLOQUY.**

con-loquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum (*eum* with, *loquor* speak), speak with, hold a conference.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, attempt, try. CONATIVE.

cōnscius, -a, -um (*eum* with, *sciō* know), **CONSCIOUS.**

cōnsēsus, -ūs, m. (*cōnsentiō* think together), agreement, **CONSENT.**

cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (*eum* denoting completeness, *sequor* follow), follow after, follow; gain; obtain. **CONSEQUENT.**

cōn-serō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum (*eum* together, *serō* join), join together, join; **pūgnam cōnserere, to join battle, to fight.**

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., Publius Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

cōn-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sesum (*eum* together, *sīdō* sit down), sit down together, encamp.

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *deliberation*,
COUNSEL, *plan, design*.

cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, **stī-**
tum (cum denoting complete-
ness, *sistō place one's self*), *take*
a stand; keep a position; halt.
CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum (cum
intensive, sōlor comfort), *comfort*
greatly, CONSOLE; *encourage*,
cheer.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. (*cōnspicō*
look at), *sight, view, presence*.

cōn-spiciō, -spicere, -spēxī,
-spectum (cum denoting com-
pleteness, *spiciō look*), *behold*,
see.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*cōn-*
spiciō), *behold, see*.

cōnstantia, -ae, f. (*cōnstāns*
standing firm), *firmness, stead-*
fastness, CONSTANCY.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui,
stitūtum (cum denoting com-
pleteness, *statuō cause to stand*),
resolve, determine; establish,
station. CONSTITUTE, CON-
STITUENT.

cōn-suēscō, **cōn-suēscere**, **cōn-**
suēvī, **cōn-suētum**, *become*
accustomed, be wont.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *tradition*,
usage.

cōnsul, **cōnsulīs**, m. (*akin to*
cōnsulō consul), CONSUL; *one*
of the two chief magistrates
at Rome, chosen annually.

cōnsulāris, -e, adj., *ex-consul*;
one of consular rank.

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī,
-sūptum (cum denoting com-
pleteness, *sūmō take*), CONSUME,
waste, destroy. CONSUMPTION.
con-temnō, -temnere, -tempī,
-temptum, *despise*, CONTEMN,
CONTEMPT.

con-tendō, -tendere, -tendī,
-tentum (cum denoting com-
pleteness, *tendō stretch*), *hasten*,
march in haste; contend, dis-
pute, fight; w. inf. proceed,
set out eagerly.

contentiō, **contentiōnis**, f. (*con-*
tendō contend), CONTENTION,
strife.

contineo, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum (cum *together, teneō hold*),
hold together; encompass, hem
in, bound; occupy, restrain.
CONTENT, CONTINENT.

continenter, adv. (*continēns*
hanging together), *continually*,
without cessation.

contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāc-
tum (cum denoting complete-
ness, *tangō touch*), *touch on all*
sides; touch, border upon.
CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against*.
contumēlia, -ae, f. (cum *inten-*
sire, tumeō swell), *insult, abuse;*
disgrace. CONTUMELY.

con-valēscō, -valēscere, -valuī
(cum denoting completeness, *va-*
lēscō grow strong), *regain health*,
recover. CONVALESCENT.

con-veniō, -venire, -veni, -ven-
tum (cum *together, veniō come*),

- come together, assemble; CON-
VENE. CONVENTION.
- conventus, -ūs, m. (*convenio*
come together), court; conven-
tum agere, to hold a court.
- con-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-
sum (*cum* denoting complete-
ness, *vertō* turn), turn about,
change; in fugam convertere,
to put to flight. CONVERT,
CONVERSION.
- con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cum*
together, *vocō* call), call together,
summon, CONVOKE. CONVO-
CATION.
- cōpia, -ae, f. (*cum* denoting com-
pleteness, *ops* means of any
kind), plenty, abundance, sup-
ply; number; pl., forces, troops;
riches.
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um (*cōpia* plenty,
-sus full of), wealthy, well-sup-
plied; COPIOUS.
- cōram, prep. w. abl., in the pres-
ence of; before: adv., openly.
- Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth, a city
in Greece.
- corpus, corporis, n., body;
CORPSE.
- cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing, flank
of an army.
- corrōdō, -rōdere, -rōsī, -rōsum
(*cum* denoting completeness,
rōdō gnaw), gnaw to pieces,
gnaw; CORRODE.
- cottidīā, adv. (quot every, diēs
day), every day, daily.
- Crassus, M. Licinius Crassus, a
celebrated Roman.
- cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, burn.
CREMATION.
- creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, CREATE,
elect, choose, appoint. CREA-
TION.
- crūs, crūris, n., leg.
- cultus, -ūs, m. (*colō* cultivate),
CULTURE, civilization.
- cum, prep. w. abl., with, together
with.
- cum, rel. adv., when, as; conj.,
since; although; cum—tum,
both—and.
- cupiditās, -tās, f. (*cupidus* de-
sirous), desire, wish, longing;
eagerness, enthusiasm; CUPID-
ITY.
- cupidus, -a, -um (*cupiō* desire),
desirous, fond.
- cupiō, cupere, cupiui and cu-
piui, cupitum, desire.
- cūr, interrog. adv., why? where-
fore?
- cūra, -ae, f. (*quaerō* seek),
care.
- Curēs, Curium, f. pl., chief town
of the Sabines.
- cūria, -ae, f., curia or ward;
senate-house.
- Curīatī, -ōrum, m. pl., the name
of an Alban tribe. Three
brothers belonging to this
tribe fought with the Horatii.
- cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*cūra*
care), care for, attend to,
cause something to be done.
CURATE.
- custōs, custōdis, m. and f.,
guard, watch. CUSTODIAN.

D.

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*damnum penalty*), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.

dea, -ae, f. [see 11], goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*dē from, habeo have*), owe.

dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (*dē away, cēdō go*), go away, depart, retire.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē intensive, certō contend*), fight, contend.

decimus, -a, -um, (decem ten), tenth.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*dē intensive, capiō ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, show, DECLARE.

dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (*dē down, away, dūcō lead*), lead down or away, withdraw, lead. DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fatīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē denoting completeness, fatīgō weary*), weary completely, fatigue.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fensum, DEFEND.

dē ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (*dē from, ferō bear*), give, grant.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f., DEFORMITY, ugliness.

deinde, adv., then, after that.

dēiciō (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*dē down, ieciō throw*), throw or cast down. DEJECTION.

dēlēctus, -a, -um (*dēligō choose*), chosen.

dēlēō, -dēlēre, -dēlēvi, -dēlētum, destroy. DELETERIOUS.

dē-liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē denoting completeness, librō weigh in one's mind*), weigh well in mind, DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum (*dē apart, legō gather*), select, choose.

Dēmarātus, -ī, m., a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

dē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (*dē down, mittō let go*), let go down; capite dēmīssō, with bowed head.

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*dē intensive, mōnstrō show*), point out, show, DEMONSTRATE; declare. DEMONSTRATION.

dēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. pl., ten each.

dēnique, adv., at last, finally.

dēns, dentis, m., tooth. DENTAL.

dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (*dē down, pōnō put*), put down, lay aside, get rid of. DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

dēripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum (*dē from, rapiō seize*), plunder.

dē-scendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum (dē down, scandō go), DESCEND.

dē-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, DESCRIBE; divide. DESCRIPTION.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē intensive, signō mark), DESIGNATE, describe, mean.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē denoting negation, spērō hope), despair. DESPERATION.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (dē away, statuō put), forsake, abandon. DESSTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fui (dē away, sum be), be wanting.

dēterior, dēterius [see 85], worse.

dētrimentum, -i, n. (dēterō fr. dē away, terō rub), loss; damage, injury; DETRIMENT. DETRIMENTAL.

deus, -i, m. [see 20], god; DEITY.

dē-vehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vēctum (dē away, vehō carry), carry away, bring.

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (dē down, vorō swallow), DEVOUR, eat up.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right; dextrā (sc. manū hand), on the right. DEXTEROUS.

diciō, diciōnis, f., dominion, power.

dico, dicere, dixi, dictum, say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name;

causam dicere, to plead one's cause. DICTUM.

dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator.

diēs, diēi, m., day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilātum (dis in different directions, ferō carry), carry different ways; put off; DIFFER.

difficilis, -e (dis negative, facilis easy), DIFFICULT; impracticable.

dignitās, -ātis, f. (dignus worthy), DIGNITY, rank; honor, office.

dignus, -a, -um, worthy. DIGNIFY.

di-micō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight, contend.

dimicātiō, -ōnis, f., a struggle, combat.

di-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (dis hither and thither, mittō send), DISMISS.

di-ruō, -ruere, -rui, -rūtum (dis asunder, ruō hurl down), destroy; overthrow; raze.

dis, m. and f.; dite, n.; gen. ditis [ditior, ditissimus], rich.

dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (dis away, cēdō go), go away, depart, leave.

dissidium, -i, n. (dissideō fr. dis apart, sedeō sit), dissension.

dis-tribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum (dis among several, tribuō give), DISTRIBUTE, divide.

diū, diūtius, diūtissimō, adv., a long time.

dives, gen. divitis, adj., rich.

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a distinguished man among the Helvetii.

dīvidō, -videre, -visī, -visum (*dis* asunder, root *vid* separate), DIVIDE; separate. DIVISION.

Divitiacus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui.

dīvitiāe, -ārum, f. pl. (*dīves* rich), riches, wealth.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

docēō, docēre, docuī, doctum, teach, instruct; inform. DOCTOR.

dolor, doloris, m., (*doleō* feel pain), grief, sorrow, trouble. DOLOROUS.

dolus, -ī, m., fraud, deceit, stratagem.

domō, -āre, domuī, domitum, subdue, conquer.

domus, -ūs and **-ī** [see 27], house; **domī**, at home; **domum**, home, homeward; **domō**, from home. DOME.

dubitātīō, -ōnis, f. (*dubitō* waver in opinion), doubt, hesitation.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful. DUBIOUS.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. pl. (*duo* two, *centum* hundred), two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, lead, draw; suppose, consider; put off. DUCT, AQUEDUCT.

dulcis, dulce, sweet, pleasant. DULCET.

dum, conj., while, as long as; until.

Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m., one of the Aedui.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj. [see 108], two.

dux, ducis, m. and f., leader, guide; commander, general.

E.

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring up a child, EDUCATE. EDUCATION.

ēdūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum (*ex* out, *dūcō* lead), lead out, lead forth. EDUCE, EDUCATION.

effeminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (*ex* denoting change of nature, *fēmina* woman), enervate. EFFEMINATE.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*ex* out, *faciō* make), EFFECT, accomplish.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum (*ex* out, *fundō* pour), pour out, overflow. EFFUSION.

Ēgeria, -ae, f., a nymph, celebrated in Roman mythology as the wife and instructress of Numa.

ego, pers. pron. [see 112], I.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (*ex* out, *gradior* go), go out, depart. EGRESS.

ēlābor, -lābi, -lapsus sum (*ex* out, *lābor* slip), glide away, escape. ELAPSE.

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī (*ex* out, *mineō* jut), rise above; appear. EMINENT.

- emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy.**
enim, conj., for.
ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
out of a place, nūntiō carry a report), divulge, report.
eo, ire, ivi, itum [see 126], go.
eo, adv., to that place, thither,
there; eo — quō, the — the.
Ēpirus, i, f., Epirus.
eques, equitis, m. (equus horse,
eo go), rider, horseman; cav-
alryman; pl., cavalry.
equester, -tris, -tre (eques horse-
man), of horsemen, of cavalry.
EQUESTRIAN.
equitatus, -ūs, m. (equitō to be a
horseman), cavalry.
equus, i, m., horse.
ē-ripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum
(ex out, rapiō tear), tear out or
from, take from.
et, conj., and, even; et — et, both
— and.
etiam, conj. (et-iam), and also,
also, even.
et-si, conj., even if, although.
Etrūria, -ae, f., a country of
Italy, modern Tuscany.
ē-vādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum
(ex out, vādō go hastily), escape,
get away.
ē-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-
sum (ex out, vertō turn), turn
out; overturn, destroy.
ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex out,
volō fly), fly out, fly away.
ex, ē, prep. w. abl. [see LN. IV.,
VY., 1], out of, from among;
from; of.
- exemplum, -i, n. (eximō fr. ex**
out, emō take), EXAMPLE.
ex-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum (ex out, eo
go), go out, go forth, depart;
pass., be gone.
exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. (exercitō to
exercise), practice.
exercitus, -ūs, m. (exercēs exer-
cise), army. See āgmen.
exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum (ex
out, agō drive), drive out, lead
out, spend; aestās exācta est,
the summer is gone. EXACTION.
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
think, suppose; believe, imagine.
exitium, -i, n. (exēō go out), de-
struction, ruin.
ex-ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
effectually, orō entreat), move
by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.
expeditus, -a, -um (expediō fr.
ex away from, pēs foot), unin-
cumbered, passable. EXPEDI-
TIOUS.
ex-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pul-
sum (ex out, pellō drive), ex-
pel, drive out.
ex-plicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
out, plioō fold), unfold, explain,
spread. EXPLICATION.
explōrātor, -ōris, m. (explōrō
explore), spy, scout.
ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
effectually, pūgnō fight), take
by assault; storm, capture.
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ex
very much, spectō look for), EX-
PECT, long for; wait. EXPEC-
TATION.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond*.

ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum (*ex* out, *trahō* draw), draw out, EXTRACT. EXTRACTION.

extrēmus, -a, -um, [see 85], *furthermost, most distant*, EXTREME.

ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ūssi, -ūstum (*ex* entirely, *ūrō* burn), burn up.

F.

fābula, -ae, f. (*fārī* to speak), story, FABLE.

facile, **facilius**, **facillimē**, adv. (*facilis* easy), easily, readily, without difficulty.

facilis, **facile** (*faciō* do, -ilis denoting capability), easy, practicable. FACILE.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, do, make; incite, furnish; iter *facere*, to march, to journey.

factiō, **factiōnis**, f. (*faciō* take part with one), FACTION, political party.

factum, -ī, n. (*faciō* do), deed, act. **facultās**, -ātis, f. (*facilis* which see), ability, opportunity. FACULTY.

familia, -ae, f. (*famulus* servant), household, FAMILY.

familiāritās, -ātis, f. (*familiāris* intimate), intimacy, friendship, FAMILIARITY.

famula, -ae, f., maid, maid-servant.

fauce, abl. f. sing., throat; **fauces**, **faucium**, f. pl., throat.

Faustulus, -ī, m., the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor, show favor.

fēlēs and **fēlis**, **fēlia**, f., cat. FELINE.

fēliciter, adv. (**fēlix** happy), happily, successfully.

fēlix, gen. **fēlicis**, adj. (*fēō* produce), happy, fortunate. FELITICIOUS.

fēmina, -ae, f., female, woman. FEMININE.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, bring, carry; endure.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; sword.

ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncultivated; **fera**, -ae, f., wild beast.

fēstum, -ī, n., FEAST.

fidēs, **fideī**, f. (*fidō* trust), faith, confidence; pledge, promise; protection. FIDELITY.

filia, -ae, f. [see 11], daughter.

filius, -ī, m., son.

finiō, **finire**, **finivī**, **finitum** (*finis* end), end, FINISH.

finis, **finis**, m., end, limit, boundary; pl., territory. FINAL.

finitimus, -a, -um (*finis* boundary), neighboring, **finitimī**, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.

fiō, **ferī**, **factus** sum [see 126], be made; become; occur, happen.

firmiter, adv. (**firmus** firm), firmly, securely.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-
mand.

flamma, -ae, f., FLAME.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, weep.

flēns, gen. flentis, weeping.

flōs, flōris, m., flower. FLORAL.

flūmen, flūminis, n. (fluō flow),
river.

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxum, flow.
FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum,
dig. FOSSIL.

foedus, foederis, n., league,
treaty. FEDERAL.

formidō, formidinis, f., fear,
terror.

fōrmōsitās, -ātis, f., beauty.

fōrtasse, adv. (fōrs chance), per-
haps.

fōrte, adv. (fōrs chance), acci-
dentally, by chance.

fortis, forte, brave, bold, coura-
geous, valiant; strong.

fortiter, fortius, fortissimē, adv.
(fortis brave), bravely, valiantly.

fōrtūna, -ae, f., FORTUNE.

forum, -i, n., market-place; FO-
RUM; court of justice.

fossa, -ae, f. (fodiō dig), ditch,
trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother. FRA-
TERNAL.

frīgus, frigoris, n., cold, frost.

frūmentārius, -a, -um (frūmen-
tum corn), of corn; rēs frū-
mentāria, supplies.

frūmentum, -i, n., corn, grain.

fruo, frui, fructus sum, enjoy
[see 104].

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum,
flee; escape. FUGITIVE.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, put to
flight, rout.

fulmen, fulminis, n. (fulgeō
flash), thunder-bolt, lightning.
FULMINATE.

fūnus, fūneris, n., funeral pro-
cession, burial, FUNERAL.

G.

Gabīnius, -i, m., Aulus Gabinius,
a Roman consul.

Gāius Valerius Proculus, a
distinguished Gaul, friend of
Caesar.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul; it em-
braced modern France, Bel-
gium, that part of the Neth-
erlands south of the Rhine,
the provinces of Germany
west of the Rhine, and a
large part of Switzerland; all
this was known as Gallia
ūlterior, farther Gaul, and as
Gallia trānsalpīna, Gaul
across the Alps, i. e. from
Rome: the northern part of
modern Italy was known as
Gallia citerior, hither Gaul,
and as Gallia cisalpīna, Gaul
this side the Alps, i. e. towards
Rome.

gallīna, -ae, f., hen.

Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul.

Garumna, -ae, f., a river of
Gaul, the Garonne.

geminus, -a, -um, *double*; **geminī filii**, *twin-sons*.
gener, **generi**, m., *son-in-law*.
Genāva, -ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, modern GENEVA.
gōns, **gentis**, f. (**gignō beget**), *nation, tribe*. GENTILE.
genus, **generis**, n., *birth, kind, race*.
Germāni, -ōrum, m. pl., THE GERMANS.
gerō, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestum**, *bear; carry; carry on, wage; pass., happen, take place*.
gignō, **gignere**, **genui**, **genitum**, *beget; bear; pass., be born*.
glōria, -ae, f., GLORY, *renown*.
glōrior, -āri, -ātus sum (**glōria** *glory*), *boast*, GLORY.
Gnaeus, -i, m., *Gnaeus*.
gradus, -ūs, m. (**gradior** *to step*), *step, stair*. GRADE.
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.
Graecus, -a, -um, *Grecian*, GREEK.
grātia, -ae, f., (**grātus** *beloved, dear*), *favor; influence, popularity*; GRACE: pl., *thanks*.
grātulor, -āri, -ātus sum, *CONGRATULATE*.
gravis, *grave, heavy, burdensome*; GRIEVOUS, *painful, severe*. GRIEF.
graviter, **gravius**, **gravissimē**, *adv. (gravis heavy), heavily; grievously, severely*.
grūs, **gruis**, m. and f., *crane (a bird)*.

H.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *HAVE, hold; regard, consider; deliver*.
Harūdēs, -um, m. pl., a people of Southern Germany.
hasta, -ae, f., *spear, lance*.
haud, *adv., not at all, by no means*.
haedus and **hoedus**, -i, m., *kid, a young goat*.
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. pl., an ancient people occupying a large part of the country now called Switzerland.
Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the Helvetii*.
herbidus, -a, -um (**herba** *grass*), *grassy*.
hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl. (**hiems** *winter*), *winter-quarters*; [properly an adjective with **castra** understood.] HIBERNATE.
hic, **haec**, **hōc**, *this*; pl., *these* [see 113].
hic, *adv. (hic this), here, in this place*.
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**hiems** *winter*), *pass the winter*.
hinc, *adv. (hic this), hence, from this place*.
Hispānia, -ae, f., *SPAIN*.
hodiē, *adv. (contracted fr. hōc and diē, on this day), to-day*.
homō, **hominis**, m. and f., *human being, person, man*. [See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.]
honor, **honōris**, m., *HONOR*.
hōra, -ae, f., *HOUR*.

Horātiī, -ōrum, m. pl., three Roman brothers who fought against the Curiatii.

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, EXHORT, urge. HORTATORY.

hospitium, -i, n. (hospes guest), HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOSPITABLE.

hostis, hostis, m. and f., enemy, public enemy: [inimicus is a personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (hie this), hither, to this place.

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. (hūmānus of or belonging to man), HUMANITY, refinement, culture.

I.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, iacitum, lie.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl, cast.

iam, adv., now, already.

Iāniculum, -i, n., a hill across the Tiber from Rome.

ibi, adv. (is), there, in that place; then.

icō, icere, Icī, ictum, strike; foedus icere, to ratify or make a treaty. ICTUS.

idem, eadem, idem (is and dem. suffix dem), the same [see 113].

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.

igitur, conj., therefore.

ignis, -is, m., fire.

ille, illa, illud, that, he; pl., those.

immeritus, -a, -um (in negative, meritus deserving), not deserving; not deserved.

immortālis, immortalē (in negative, mortālis mortal), IMMORTAL.

immortālitas, -ātis, f. (immortālis immortal), IMMORTALITY.

impedimentum, -i, n. (impediō fr. in in the way of, pedēs feet), hindrance, pl., baggage of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [sarcinae are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

impendeō, -pendere, no perf. nor sup. (in over, pendeō hang), overhang; IMPEND.

imperātor, -ōris, m. (imperō command), commander-in-chief, general.

imperītus, -a, -um (in negative, perītus skilled), unskilled, inexperienced.

imperium, -i, n. (imperō command), command; government; EMPIRE, supreme power.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in upon, parō put), give orders, order; command, rule.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, assault. IMPETUS.

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beseech, entreat, IMPLORE.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (in upon, pōnō place), place upon; levy upon. IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in into, portō bring), bring into, IMPORT.

in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.,

- into, to, towards, against; w. abl., in, on, upon, among.*
inānis, ināne, empty; vain, ineffectual.
incendō, incendere, incendi, incensum, set on fire, burn.
INCENDIARY.
incidō, -cidere, -cidī (in into, cadō fall), fall into or upon; chance to meet with. INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.
in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in without additional force, citō put in quick motion), instigate, encourage; INCITE.
incohō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, begin.
in-colō, -colere, -colui (in in, colō dwell), inhabit, dwell.
incolumis, -e, unhurt, safe.
incommodum, -ī (incommodus fr. in negative, commodus convenient), inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.
in-crēdibilis, -e (in negative, crēdō believe, -ibilis denoting capability), INCREDIBLE; extraordinary.
incuriō, -ōnis, f. (incurrō fr. in into, against: currō run), attack; INCURSION.
incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in against, causa cause), censure, blame.
inde, adv., thence, thereupon, then.
in-dicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictum (in among, dicō speak), declare, proclaim.
indignus, -a, -um (in negative, dignus worthy), unworthy.
indolēs, -is, f., disposition, nature.
in-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum (in into, dūcō lead), lead into; INDUCE.
indulgeō, indulgēre, indulsi, indultum, favor, show favor; INDULGE.
induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtum, put on, dress; clothe.
inermis, -e (in negative, arma arms), unarmed; defenceless.
inferior, inferius, lower. INFERIOR [see 85].
in-ferō, in-ferre, in-tuli, in-lātum (in into, upon, ferō bring) bring into or upon, make upon. INFER, INFERENCE.
in-fluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxum (in into, fluō flow), flow into, empty. INFLUENCE, INFLUX.
in-frendeō, -frendere, gnash with the teeth.
ingēns, gen. ingentis, vast, enormous, large.
ingredior, -gredi, -gressus, (in in, gradior go), enter.
in-haereō, -haerere, -haesi, -haesum (in to, in; haereō stick), stick or cleave to or in.
in-hiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (in for, hiō gape), gape for, desire.
inimicus, -a, -um, (in negative, amicus friendly), unfriendly, hostile; INIMICAL. See hostis.
iniciō (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (in into, iaciō throw),

throw into; inspire, infuse.

INJECT.

initium, -i, n. (*inēō* fr. *in* upon, *ēō* enter), beginning. **INITIAL**. **iniūria**, -ae, f. (*iniūrius* fr. *in* negative, *iūs* right), INJURY, wrong; injustice, damage, insult.

in-nāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum (in *in*, *nāscor* be born), spring up in.

inopia, -ae, f. (*inopēs* fr. *in* negative, *opēs* resources), want, scarcity.

inquam and **inquiō**, defective verb, say.

inrēdiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (in *in*, *rēte* net), entangle, ensnare.

in-rideō, -ridēre, -risī, -rīsum (in *at*, *rideō* laugh), laugh at, deride.

inritō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, provoke, incite, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., treachery, deceit. INSIDIOUS.

insignis, **insigne** (in upon, *signum* mark), remarkable, extraordinary; **insigne**, -is, n., sign.

insolenter, **insolentius**, **insolentissimē**, adv., contrary to custom.

instituō, -stituerē, -stitui, -stitūtum, appoint, INSTITUTE; train up, instruct.

Institutum, -i, n., custom; INSTITUTION.

in-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum (in without additional force, *struō* arrange),

arrange, form, draw up. INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intellegō -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum (inter between, *legō* choose), understand, know. INTELLIGENT.

inter, prep. w. acc., between, among.

inter-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (inter between, *cēdō* go), intervene. INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (inter between, *capiō* take), usurp; take away fraudulently; INTERCEPT.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (inter between, *faciō* make), kill, slay.

interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmp-tum, kill, put to death.

interneciō, -ōnis, f. (*internecō* fr. *inter* completely, *neō* kill), slaughter.

inter-rēgnum, -i, n. (inter between, *rēgnum* reign), INTERREGNUM.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī (inter between, *sum* be), be between, interterrene.

inter-vāllum, -i, n. (inter between, *vāllum* rampart), INTERVAL, distance.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.

in-tueor, -tuorī, -tuitus sum (in upon, *at*; *tueor* look), look at or upon.

intus, adv., within.

in-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-

tum (in-upon, *veniō* come), come upon, find.
invidia, -ae, f. (*invidēō* look askance at), ENVY, hatred.
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling; **āē** **invītō**, against his will.
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum** [see 113], self; himself, herself, itself; very; **ipse rēx**, the very king.
is, ea, id, he, her, it; this; that see [113].
Isocrates, -is, m., a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.
ita, adv. (**is**), so, thus, in this manner, as follows.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
Italus, -a, -um, Italian.
ita-que, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.
item, adv. (**is**), in like manner, likewise.
iter, **itineris**, n. (**ēō** go), journey; march; way, road, route; **iter facere**, to march. **ITINERANT**.
iterum, adv. (**is**), again, a second time.
Iuba, -ae, m., Juba, a king of Numidia.
iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iūssum**, command, order.
iūdicium, -i, n. (**iūdex** judge), judgment; trial; sentence; decision. **JUDICIAL**.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**iūs** law, **dicō** point out), JUDGE; determine, conclude; think. **ADJUDICATE**.
iugum, -i, n. (**iungō** join), yoke; ridge, summit: in war a frame

made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.
iumentum, -i, n., beast of burden as a horse or an ox.
Iuppiter and **Iūpiter**, **Iovis**, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.
Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.
iūs, **iūris**, n., right, law. **JURIST**.
iūs-iurandum, **iūris-iurandī**, n., oath [see 110].
iūssū, m. abl., (**iubeō** command), by command.
iūstus, -a, -um (**iūs** law, suffix -tus denoting fulness), JUST, right.
iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtum**, help, aid, assist. **ADJUTANT**.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.
Labiēnus, -i, m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.
labor, **labōris**, m., LABOR, toil.
lacrima, -ae, f., tear.
lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE.
laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum (**laetus** joyful), rejoice, exult.
laetus, -a, -um, joyful.
lanīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tear in pieces.

lapis, lapidis, m., stone. LAPI-
DARY.
laqueus, -i, m., noose, snare.
Lārentia, -ae, f. See **Acca.**
largitiō, -ōnis, f. (*largior give bountifully*), *liberality.*
lātō, adv. (*lātus broad*), *widely, extensively.*
Latinus, -i, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.
latrō, latrōnis, m., robber.
lātrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bark, bark at.
latus, lateris, n., side; flank.
LATERAL.
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide; large, spacious. LATITUDE.
Lāvinia, -ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.
Lāvinium, -i, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. (*lēgō send on an embassy*), *embassy.* LEGATION.
lēgātus, -i, m. (*lēgō send as a representative*), *ambassador, envoy, LEGATE; lieutenant.*
legiō, legiōnis, f. (*legō levy*), *LEGION*, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, choose.
Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Leman or Geneva in Switzerland.
lēnitās, -ātis, f., smoothness.

leō, leōnis, m., LION.
Lepidus, -i, m., M. Aemilius Lepidus, consul with Caesar in 46 B. C.
lētālis, -e (*lētum death; suffix -ālis, belonging to*), *fatal, deadly.*
lēvitās, -ātis, f. (*lēvis smooth*), *smoothness.*
levitās, -ātis, f. (*levis light*), *lightness.* LEVITY.
lēx, lēgis, f., law. LEGAL.
liber, libera, liberum, free.
liberālitās, -ātis, f. (*liberālis fr. liber free*), *LIBERALITY, generosity.*
liberō, liberius, adv. (*liber free*), *freely, unreservedly.*
liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., children.
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*liber free*), *to free, LIBERATE.*
libertās, -ātis, f., freedom, liberty, permission.
liceor, licērī, licitus sum, bid at an auction.
licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, it is permitted, allowed; one may [see 128 and LN.
LXIX., Examples 2-5].
licet, although.
lingonēs, -um, m. pl., a people in Northeastern Gaul.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; LAN- GUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.
Liscus, -i, m., a magistrate among the Aedui.
littera and litera, -ae, f. (*linō besmear*), *LETTER* of the alphabet; *pl., letter, epistle.* LITERATURE.

locus, -i, m. [pl. loci and loca], place. LOCAL, LOCALITY.
longō, **longius**, **longissimē**, adv. (*longus long*), far, by far; often used to strengthen superlatives.
longissimē, adv., very far.
longitūdō, -inis, f. (*longus long*), length. LONGITUDE.
longus, -a, -um, long.
loquor, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, speak, talk. LOQUACIOUS.
lōrica, -ae, f., corselet.
Lūcius, -i, m., a Roman praenomen.
Lūcrētia, -ae, f., a Roman matron, wife of Collatinus.
lūdus, -i, m., play, game.
lupa, -ae, f., she-wolf.
lupus, -i, m., wolf.
lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, review.
lūx, **lūcis**, f. (*lūceō shine*), light.
lyra, -ae, f., lyre.

M.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen.
M', abbreviation of *Mānius*, a Roman praenomen.
Macedonia, -ae, f., Macedonia.
magis, **māximē**, adv., more, rather.
magister, -trī, m. (fr. *mae*, root of *magnus*, signifying to be great), master, chief, commander.
magistrātus, -ūs, m. (magister), magistrate.
māgnitūdō, -inis, f. (*magnus great*), size, MAGNITUDE.
māgnus, -a, -um, great, large, big, mighty. MAGNI-
māiestās, -ātis, f., MAJESTY, dignity.
māior, **māius**, gen. **māiōris** (comp. of *magnus*) larger, greater, bigger; **māiōrēs**, -um, m. pl., ancestors. MAJOR.
male, **pēius**, **peissimē**, adv., badly, ill, wickedly.
maledicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum (*male ill, dicō speak*), speak ill of, revile, rail at; [with dat.] MALEDICTION.
maleficiū, -i, n. [*maleficus doing evil*], mischief, damage.
maleficus, -a, -um (*male wickedly, faciō do*), wicked; **maleficus**, -i, m., an evil-doer.
mālō, **mālle**, **mālui** (*magis more, volō be willing*), be more willing, choose, rather, prefer [see 125].
malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked, evil, destructive.
mandātum, -i, n. (*mandō fr. manus hand, dō put*; put in one's hand), charge, order, command. MANDATE.
maneō, **manēre**, **mānsi**, **mānsūm**, stay, RE-MAIN.
Manius, -i, m. See **M'**.
manus, -ūs, f., hand; force of soldiers. MANUFACTURE.
Marcellus, -i, m., C. Claudius Marcellus, consul in 49 B. C.
Marcus, -i, m., a Roman name.
Mārcus, -i, m. See **M.**

mare, maris, n., sea.
maritus, -i, m. (marita wife), belonging to a wife, husband.
Mārs, Mārtis, m., son of Jupiter and Juno, and god of war.
MARTIAL.
massa, -ae, f., MASS, lump.
māter, mātris, f., MOTHER; matron.
mātrimōnium, -i, n., (māter mother), marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry. MATRIMONY.
Mātrona, -ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern *Marne*.
mātūrē, adv. (mātūrus ripe), early, soon.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten, make haste.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, MATURE.
Mauritānia, -ae, f. Mauritania, a district of northern Africa.
mediocriter, adv. (mediocris fr. medius denoting a middle state), moderately; **nōn mediocriter, exceedingly.**
medius, -a, -um, in the middle or midst; in the middle of; middle, central.
mel, mellis, n., honey. MELLI-FLUENT.
melior, melius, gen. meliōris (comp. of bonus), better.
memini, meminisse, remember [see 127].
memor, gen. memoris, mindful of, mindful.
memoria, -ae, f. (memor mind-

ful of), MEMORY, recollection, remembrance.
mēns, mentis, f., mind. See animus. MENTAL.
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., month.
mercātor, -ōris, m. (mercator to trade), trader, MERCHANT.
mercēs, mercēdis, f., wages, hire, reward, price.
mereō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, deserve, acquire.
meritum, -i, n., desert. MERIT.
Messāla, -ae, m., a Roman name.
mētiōr, mēti, mēnsus sum, MEASURE, deal out.
Mettius, -i, m., Mettius Fufetius, an Alban general, put to death by Tullus Hostilius.
meus, -a, -um, my, mine.
miles, militis, m., soldier.
militāris, -e (miles soldier, -āris belonging to), MILITARY; rēs militāris, military science.
mille, pl. milia, milium, thousand [see 108].
miluus or milvus, -i, m., kite (a bird).
minimē [parvē, minus, minimē], adv., least, by no means.
minimus, -a, -um, least [see 85].
minor, minus, smaller, less [see 85]; minor nātū, younger.
minuō, minuere, minui, minūtum, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.
minus, adv., less. See minimē.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, AD-MIRE; wonder at.

mirus, -a, -um (*mirror wonder at*),
wonderful.

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, pitiable, lamentable*, MISERABLE.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates*,
a king of Pontus.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum,
send.

moenia, moenium, n. pl., *walls*
of a city.

molliō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (*mollis*
soft), *soften, subdue*.

moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *remind* ;
advise, AD-MONISH.

mōns, mōntis, m., MOUNTAIN,
MOUNT.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
(*mōnstrum* a divine omen), *show*,
point out. DE-MONSTRATE.

morbis, -i, m., *disease*. MOR-
BID.

**morior, morī and moriri, mor-
tuus sum**, *die*.

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, *tarry*,
delay, hinder.

mors, mortis, f., *death*. MOR-
TAL.

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, manner* ;
usage ; *pl.*, *character*. MORAL.

moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum,
MOVE ; *excite* : *castra movēre*,
to break up camp.

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman*.

multitūdō, -inis, f. (*multus*
much), MULTITUDE.

multus, -a, -um, *much, many a* ;
pl., *many*. MULTI-PLY.

Munda, -ae, f., a town in Spain.

mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (*moenia*
wall, rampart), *fortify*.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. (*mūniō* *fortify*),
fortification. MUNITION.

mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift, reward*.
RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūris, m., *mouse*.

mūsculus, -i, m. (*mūs*), a little
mouse.

N.

nam, conj., *for*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be*
born. NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth* ; *mi-
nor nātū, younger*.

nātūra, -ae, f. (*nāscor* *be born*),
NATURE.

nātus, -a, -um (*nāscor* *be born*),
old.

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship*. NAV-AL,
NAVI-GATE.

nē, adv., *not* ; *conj.*, *that not* ; *that*

ne, interrog. particle ; is ap-
pended to first word of the
question and asks for infor-
mation.

nec. See *neque*.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *kill, put*
to death.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deny*,
refuse. NEGATION.

negōtium, -i, n. (*nec not, ōtium*
leisure), *business* ; *quid negōti?*
what business? NEGOTIATE.

nēmō, nēminis, m. and f. (*ne*
not, homō a man), *no one, no-
body*.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson.

NEPOTISM.

Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nēquāquam, adv., by no means.

neque, nec, conj., and not; **neque—neque, neither—nor.**

nervus, -ī, m., NERVE, vigor, energy.

nēsciō, -īre, -īvi and -īi, -itum (ne not, sciō know), not know.

neuter, neutra, neutrum (ne not, uter one or the other), neither [see §4]. **NEUTER.**

nihil, n. indecl., nothing.

nihilō minus, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nihilum, -ī, n., nothing.

Nīlus, -ī, m., the river Nile.

nisi, conj. (ne not, si if), if not, unless, except.

nitor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum, strive, endeavor.

nōbilis, nōbile (nōscō know, -bilis denoting capability), well known, **NOBLE, of high rank.**

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. (nōbilis noble), **NOBILITY.**

nōlō, nōlle, nōluf (ne not, volō willing) be unwilling.

nōmen, nōminis, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., not.

nōnne, interrog. particle, expects the answer yes.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, some one ; nōnnūllī, -ōrum, m. pl., several persons.

Norēia, -ae, f., a town in Noricum.

Noricus, -a, -um, of Noricum, a country lying between the Upper Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., we [see 112].

nostr, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.

notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (nota, a mark), mark. **NOTE, NOTATION.**

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., the name of several cities in Gaul.

novus, -a, -um, new, strange ; recent, fresh ; novae rēs, revolution ; āgmen novissimum, the rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctis, f., night.

nūbēs, nūbis, f., cloud.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum, veil herself for the bridegroom, marry [of a bride]. **NUPTIAL.**

nūdus, -a, -um, naked, bare ; NUDE.

nūllus, -a, -um (ne not, ūllus any one), no, none, not any one.

num, whether ; in direct questions to be omitted in translation.

Numa, -ae, m., Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

numerus, -ī, m., NUMBER.

Numitor, -ōris, m., father of Rhea Silvia.

numquam and nunquam, adv., (ne not, umquam ever), never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūncupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to name.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (nūn-

tus messenger), AN-NOUNCE,
report.

nūper, adv. (novus new), newly,
recently.

nūtriō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, nourish.
NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nympha, -ae, f., a nymph; the
nymphs were demi-goddesses
inhabiting the sea, rivers,
fountains, woods, trees, and
mountains.

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., on account of,
for.

ob-eō, -ire, -ivi and -ii, -itum
(*ob towards, eō go*), *die.*

ob-errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob
about, errō wander), *wander*
about, wander.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum
(*ob before, at; iaciō throw*),
throw before, at, or against;
throw up. OBJECT, OBJEC-
TION.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus
sum, forget.

oboediō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (ob
without any additional force,
audiō listen to), *listen to, obey;*
be subject to. OBEDIENT.

ob-ruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum (ob
without additional force, ruō
cast down with violence), *over-*
whelm; cover.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob
on account of, sacra sacrifices),
beseech, implore.

obsec, obsidis, m. (obsidēs stay),
hostage.

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus sum (ob
with no additional force, tes-
tor bear witness), *conjure, be-*
seech.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
tum (ob with no additional
force, teneō hold), hold, OB-
TAIN, possess.

obviam, adv., in the way; ob-
viam ire or fierī, to meet.

occāsus, -ūs, m. (occidō fall),
going down; sōlis occāsū, at
sunset.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum
(*ob against, caedō cut, strike*),
kill, slay.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hide,
conceal. OCCULT.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob
with no additional force, capiō
take), *seize, take possession of,*
OCCUPY. OCCUPATION.

occurrō, -currere, -occurri and
-curri, -cursum (ob towards,
currō run), meet. OCCUR, OC-
CURRENCE.

Oceanus, -i, m., OCEAN.

Ocelum, -i, n., a town in the
western part of Cisalpine
Gaul.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth. Oc-
TAVE.

octōdecim, num. adj., eighteen.

octōgintā, num. adj., eighty.

oculus, -i, m., eye. OCULIST.

ōdi, ōdisse, hate [see 127].

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēn-

sum, OFFEND, wound. **OFFENCE**.
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum (ob towards, ferō bring), OFFER, present.
officiū, -ī, n. (opēs aid, faciō render), service, duty; obedience, allegiance. **OFFICE**.
omnino, adv. (omnis all), altogether, at all.
omnis, omne, all, every, the whole. **OMNI-SCIENCE**, **OMNI-POTENT**, **OMNI-PRESENT**.
onus, oneris, n., load, burden; weight; size. **ONEROUS**.
opis, opem, ope [nom., dat., and voc., sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., opēs, opum, opibus, etc.; f., power; means, resources.
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it behooves, it is necessary, one ought [see 128 and LN. LXIX., Examples 6-8].
oppidum, -ī, n., town, walled town.
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ob against, pugnō fight), attack, besiege, assault.
optiō, -ōnis, f. (optō choose), choice, **OPTION**.
opus, operis, n., work, labor.
orātiō, orātiōnis, f. (orō speak), speech, harangue; **ORATION**.
orātōr, orātōris, m. (orō plead), **ORATOR**.
orbis, -is, m., the circle of the world, earth, world.
ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ordō arranging), arrange, order.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.
oriōns, gen. orientis (part. fr. orior), rising. **ORIENT**.
orior, oriri, ortus sum, rise, arise, begin.
Ornāmentum, -ī, n. (ornō adorn), **ORNAMENT**, distinction.
orō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (as mouth), beseech, beg; implore, pray.
os, ōris, n., mouth; face. **ORAL**.
os, ossis, n., bone. **OSSI-FY**.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (ob before, tendō spread), show, point out, exhibit. **OSTENSIBLE**.
Ōstia, -ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, built by Ancus Marcius.
ostium, -ī, n., mouth of a river.
ovum, -ī, n., egg. **OVAL**.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.
pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.
pābulum, -ī, n. (pascō feed), food.
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pax peace), **PACIFY**; subdue.
paene, adv., almost, nearly.
pāgus, -ī, district, canton.
Palaepharsālus, -ī, f. Old Pharsalus, a town of Thessaly.
pār, gen. paris, equal, like. **PAR**.
parātus, -a, -um (part. of parō prepare), **PRE-PARED**, ready.

parcō, *parcere*, *peperci* and *parsi*, *parcitur* and *parsum* (*parens spare*), *to spare*.
pariō, *parere*, *peperi*, *paritum* and *partum*, *bear, bring forth*; *ovum parere*, *to lay an egg*.
pars, *partis*, *f.*, *PART*, *share*; *side*; *direction*.
parvus, *-a*, *-um* [*comp. minor*, *superl., minimus*], *small, little, insignificant*.
pāscor, *pāsci*, *pāstus sum*, *feed, graze*.
passus, *-us*, *m.* (*pandō stretch out the feet*), *step, PACE*; *as a measure of length, about five feet*.
pāstor, *pāstōris*, *m.* (*pāscō feed*), *shepherd. PASTOR*.
patefaciō, *-facere*, *-feci*, *-factum* (*pateō be open, faciō make*), *make open, open*.
pater, *patris*, *m.*, *FATHER*.
paternus, *-a*, *-um* (*pater father*), *PATERNAL*.
patior, *pati*, *passus sum*, *let, allow; suffer. PASSION, PASSIVE*.
patria, *-ae*, *f.* (*pater father*), *native land, fatherland. PATRIAL*.
pauci, *-ae*, *-a*, *adj. pl.*, *few*.
paulus, *-a*, *-um*, *little*; **paulō**, *n.* *abl. sing.*, *by a little, little*.
pāvō, *-ōnis*, *m. and f.*, *peacock*.
pāx, *pācis*, *f.*, *PEACE. PACIFY*.
pellis, *pellis*, *f.*, *skin*.
pellō, *pellere*, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, *drive out or away, banish; rout. RE-PULSE*.

penna, *-ae*, *f.*, *feather. PEN*.
per, *prep. w. acc.*, *through*; *by means of, by*.
percutiō, *-cutere*, *-cussi*, *-cussum* (*per through, quatiō strike*), *strike through, strike. PERCUSSION*.
per-dō, *-dere*, *-didi*, *-ditum* (*per through, dō put*), *lose. PERDITION*.
per-ducō, *-ducere*, *-dūxi*, *-ductum* (*per through, dūcō lead*), *lead through or to, conduct; fossam perducere*, *to extend or make a trench*.
per-eō, *-ii* or *-ivi*, *-itum*, *disappear, perish*.
per-facilis, *-e* (*per very, facilis easy*), *very easy*.
perficiō, *-ficere*, *-feci*, *-fectum* (*per completely, faciō make*), *accomplish. PERFECTION*.
perfidia, *-ae*, *f.* (*perfidus one who breaks his promise*), *PERFIDY*.
periculōsus, *-a*, *-um* (*periculum danger*; *suffix -sus full of*), *dangerous*.
periculum, *-i*, *n.*, *danger, risk, PERIL*.
peritus, *-a*, *-um*, *skilful, experienced*.
per-mittō, *-mittere*, *-misi*, *-missum* (*per through, mittō let go*), *PERMIT, allow. PERMISSION*.
per-moveō, *-movēre*, *-mōvi*, *-mōtum* (*per completely, moveō move*), *prevail upon*.

perniciōsa, perniciōsī, f. (*perneōō* fr. *per* completely, *neōō* kill), ruin, destruction. **PERNICIOUS.**

perpaucī, -ae, -a (*per* very, *paucī* few), very few.

per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (*per* perseveringly, *sequor* follow), pursue. **PERSECUTE.**

perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*perseverus* very strict), **PERSEVERE, continue.**

per-suādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus (*per* thoroughly, *suādēō* advise), **PERSUADE, prevail upon. PERSUASION.**

per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*per* thoroughly, *terreō* frighten), thoroughly frighten, terrify.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (*per* thoroughly, *teneō* hold, lay hold of), extend; reach, tend; **PERTAIN, belong.**

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*per* thoroughly, *turbō* disturb), greatly disturb, **DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.**

per-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum (*per* quite through, *veniō* come), come through, come to; arrive; reach.

pēs, pedis, m., foot. PEDAL.

petō, petere, petivī and petī, petītum, ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack. **PETITION.**

Petrēius, ī, m., M. Petreius, a friend of Pompey the Great. petulantia, -ae, f. (petulāns

saucy), sauciness; insolence; PETULANCE.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., Pharnaces, a king of Pontus.

pillens, -ī, m., hat; cap.

pīlum, -ī, n., javelin.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., a Roman consul.

pīstrinum, -ī, n. (pīstor miller), mill.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, PLEASE; placet, impers., it pleases, it seems good.

plaga, -ae, f., hunting-net, toil.

plēbs, plēbis, f., commons, common people.

plūrimus, -a, -um, [superl. of multus], most.

plūs, plūris [compar. of multus, see *Sō*], more.

poena, -ae, f., punishment.

PENAL.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum (*insep. prefix pot largely, liceor offer*), promise.

Pompēius, -ī, m., Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the Triumvir, Pompey the Great.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, place, put; castra pōnere, to pitch a camp. POSITION.

pōns, pōntis, m., bridge.

Pontus, -ī, m., Pontus, a division of Asia Minor.

populātiō, -ōnis, f., ravaging.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum (populus people), ravage, lay waste. DE-POPULATE.

populus, -ī, m., PEOPLE; pl., nations, tribes.

porta, -ae, f., *gate*. **PORTAL**.
portendō, -tendere, -tendī,
 -tentum, *foretell, predict, pre-*
sage; betoken; **PORTEND**.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry,*
bear, **TRANS-PORT**. **EX-PORT**.

portōrium, -ī, n. (*portō carry*),
duty paid on goods imported
or exported.

poscō, *poscere*, **poposci**, no
 sup., *demand*.

possessiō, -ōnis, f. (*possideō*
possess), **POSSESSION**.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -ses-
 sum (*potis powerful, sedeō sit*),
be master of; **POSSESS**.

possum, *posse*, **potui** (*potis*
able, sum be), *be able, can* [*see*
es].

post, prep. w. acc., *after*.

postea, adv. (*post after, ea that*),
after that, afterwards.

post-eā-quam, *after that, after*.

posterus, -a, -um [*comp., po-*
sterior; *superl., postrēmus*
and postumus], *following, en-*
suing, succeeding; **posterō**
diē, *on the following day*; **po-**
sterī, -ōrum, m. pl., *descend-*
ants.

post-quam, conj., *after, as soon as*.

postridiē, adv. (*posterō follow-*
ing, diē on the day), *on the fol-*
lowing day.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask*
for, demand.

potēns, gen. **potentis** (*possum*
be able), *able, powerful, influen-*
tial. **POTENT**.

potestās, -ātis, f. (*potēns able*),
ability, power; opportunity; *ali-*
oui potestātem facere, *to*
give any one an opportunity.

potior, **potiri**, **potitus sum** (*po-*
tis able), *acquire, obtain, get*
possession of.

potius, adv., *rather, sooner*.

prae-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-
 sum (*prae before, cēdō go*), *sur-*
pass, excel; **PRECEDE**. **PRE-**
CEDENCE, **PRECEDENT**.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 (*praecoeps headlong*), *throw vio-*
lently, throw. **PRECIPITATE**.

praecipuē, adv. (*praecipuus fr.*
praecipuō fr. prae before, capiō
take), *especially, chiefly*.

praecipuus, -a, -um, adj., *chief,*
principal.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 (*prae publicly, dicō tell*), *pro-*
claim, declare; boast. **PREDI-**
CATE.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
 (*prae before, ferō bear*), **PREFER**.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
 tum (*prae over, faciō place*),
place over, put in command of.

prae-mittō, -mittere, -misi,
 -missum (*prae forward; mittō*
send), *send forward*.

praemium, -ī, n. (*prae beyond*
others, emō take), *profit, re-*
ward. **PREMIUM**.

prae-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -po-
situm (*prae before, first; pōnō*
put), *put before or first; prefer*.

PREPOSITION.

praesēpe, -is, n. (*praesēpiō* to fence in front), *manger*

praesidium, -i, n. (*praesideo* fr. *prae* before, *sedeō* sit), *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum and **-stātum** (*prae* before, *stō* stand), *stand before, excel; sē praestāre, to show one's self.*

prae-sum, -esse, fui (*prae* over, *sum* be), *be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praeter, prep. w. acc. (*prae* before and suffix *-ter*), *past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum (*praeter* by, *eō* go), *go by. PRETERIT.*

praeter-quam, adv., except.

praetor, praetōris, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

praetōrius, -i, m., an expraetor.

prātum, -i, n., meadow.

precī, precem, prece [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **pre-cēs, precum, etc., request, prayer.**

premō, premere, pressi, pressum, PRESS, press upon. OP-PRESSION.

pretium, -i, n., worth, value, price. APPRECIATE.

pridiē, adv., on the day before.

primō, adv. (primus) at first.

primum, adv. (primus), at first; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, -a, -um [see 85], *first; primum (āgmen), the van of an army. PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.*

princeps, gen. principis, adj. (primus first, capiō take), first, chief; princeps, -ipis, m., chief, leader. PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

principātus, -ūs, m. (princeps chief), first place; pre-eminence; principātum tenēre, to be at the head.

prior, prius [superl. **primus**, see 85], *the former; first.*

Priscus, -i, m., a surname of the elder Tarquin.

pristinus, -a, -um, former; PRISTINE.

priusquam, adv., before.

privātum, adv. (privus single), as a private citizen.

privātus, -a, -um, (part. of privō deprive), PRIVATE.

prō, prep. w. abl., before, for, instead of.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (probus good), show; PROVE. PROBATION.

Procās, -ae, m. See Silvius.

prō-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi (*prō* forward, *cēdō* go), *go forth, PROCEED, advance. PROCESSION.*

procul, adv. (procellō drive forward), afar off, far.

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prō for, *cūrō* care), *care for, take care of, manage. PROCURE.*

prōdigium, -i, n. (*prō beforehand*, root *dic* point out), **PRODIGY**.

proellum, -i, n., **battle**.

profectiō, -ōnis, f. (*proficiō* set out), **departure**.

proficiō, -ficiō, -fectus sum (*prō forwards*, *faciō put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel*.

pro-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgi (*prō before*, *fugiō flee*), *flee before, flee*.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum (*prō in front*, *habēō hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from; PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION*.

prōicio (or -liciō) -icere, -iēcī, -iectum (*prō forward*, *iaciō throw*), *throw forward, cast away; sē prōicere, to throw one's self forward or down. PROJECT*.

prō-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (*prō forward*, *moveō move*), *move forward, advance*.

PROMOTION.

prope, **propius**, **proximē**, adv., *near, almost*.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*prōperus speedy*), *hasten*.

propinquus, -i, m. (*prope not far, hinc hence*), *relative; propinqua*, -ae, f., *kinswoman. PROPINQUITY*.

propior, **propius** [*superl. proximus*, see 85], *nearer*.

prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum (*prō before*, *pōnō place*), *expose to view; PROPOSAL. PROPOSAL, PROPOSITION*.

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

propter-eā, adv., *for this reason*.

propterea quod, *because*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum (*prō forwards*, *spiciō look*), *look forwards; look out for. PROSPECT, PROSPECTIVE*.

prō-sum, **prōd-esse**, **prō-fui** (*prō(d) for, sum be*), *be for, be useful; benefit, profit*.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*.

proximē, adv. [*positive prope*, compar. *propius*], *very near, very recently, last*.

proximus, -a, -um [see 85], *next, nearest; ensuing, last. PROXIMITY, APPROXIMATE*.

Ptolemaeus, -i, *Ptolemy, a king of Egypt*.

pūblicē, adv. (*pūblīus fr. populus people*), *in the name of the state*.

Pūblius, -i, m., *a Roman name*.

pudor, **pudōris**, m. (*pudeō feel shame*), *shame, feeling of shame*.

puella, -ae, f., *girl*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy. PUERILE*.

pueritia, -ae, f. (*puer boy*), *boyhood, childhood*.

pūgna, -ae, f., *battle. PUGNACIOUS*.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.

pulcher, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** (*poliō polish*), *beautiful*.

pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (*poena punishment*), **PUNISH**.

pūpillus, -i, m., (*pūpulus* a little boy), **PUPIL**, ward.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think, believe*.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenean*; **Pyrēnaei mōntēs**, the *Pyrenees*.

Q.

quā, adv. (*qui*) *where*.

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um (*quadrāgintā* forty), *fortieth*.

quadrāgintā, num. adj. indecl. (*quattuor* four), *forty*.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī** and **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *see, ask, IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUISITION*.

quālis, **quāle**, *of what sort; as*.

quam, conj. and adv., *than; as*.

quamobrem, adv., *on account of which thing; for which reason; wherefore*.

quam-quam, conj., *although*.

quam-vīs, conj. (*quam* as, *vīs* you will), *as you will; however much; although*.

quantus, -a, -um, *how much; how great; as; quantum boni, how much good*.

quārē, adv. (abl. of *quae* and *rēs*), *for which thing, for which*.

quartus, -a, -um (*quattuor* four), *fourth. QUART*.

quattuor, num. adj. indecl., *four*.

-que, conj., and [see LN. XXIII., VY., 1].

queror, **queri**, **questus sum**, *complain. QUERULOUS*.

quia, adv., *because*.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what; that* [see 114].

quī, **quae**, **quod** [interrog. pronoun used adjectively, see 116], *which? what? what sort of a? what kind of a?*

quid, *why?* [see LN. XCII., NOTE 1].

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**; gen. *cūiusdam*; [indef. pron. declined like *quī*], *a certain*.

quidem, adv., *indeed; nō — quidem, not — even*.

quīn, conj. (*quī* by *which*, *nō* not), *but that, that not*.

quīndecim, num. adj. indecl. (*quinque* five, *decem* ten), *fifteen*.

quīngentī, -ae, -a (*quinque* five, *centum* hundred), *five hundred*.

quīnī, -ae, -a (*quinque* five), *five each*.

quis, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron., *who? what?* [see 116].

quis, indef. pronoun, *anybody, anything* [see 116].

quisquam, **quaequam**, **quidquam** or **quicquam**; gen. *cūiusquam*; [indef. pron. declined like *quis*], *any one, anything, any*.

quō, adv., *that, in order that*.

quod, conj., *because, that*.

quō modo, adv. (*quī* *what, mo-*

quis manner), in what manner,
by what means, how.
quoque, conj.; also.

R.

rādix, *rādicis*, f., root; *rādix*
or *rādicis mōntis*, the foot of
a mountain. RADISH.

rapīna, -ae, f. (*rapīō* seize), *plun-*
dering; RAPINE.

rapīō, *rapere*, *rapul*, *raptum*,
seize, plunder. RAPTURE.

raptor, -ōris, m. (*rapīō* seize),
one who seizes; robber.

Rauraci, -ōrum, m., a people in
Northeastern Gaul, neighbors
of the Helvetii.

re-bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *re-*
volt, rebel.

recēns, gen. *recentis*, RECENT,
fresh, new.

recipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum
(*re back*, *capiō* take), take back;
RECEIVE; *sē recipere*, to be-
take one's self, withdraw. RE-
CEPTION.

red-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum,
(*re(d)* back again, *dō* give),
return. RENDER, RENDITION.

red-eō, -ire, -īī, -itum (*re(d)*
back, *eō* go), go back, return.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptum
(*re(d)* back, *emō* buy), buy back,
release, ransom; purchase;
hire, farm. REDEEM, REDEMP-
TION.

reditiō, -ōnis, f. (*redeō* go back),
going back, return.

re-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duo-
tum (*re back*, *dūcō* lead), lead
back, lead. REDUCE, REDUC-
TION.

re-ferō, -ferre, *rettulī*, -lātum (*re*
back, *ferō* bear), bear or bring
back, restore. REFER, RELATE.

re-fluō, -fluere, no perf. nor sup.
(*re back*, *fluō* flow), flow back.

REFLUENT, REFLEX.

regiō, -ōnis, f., REGION.

rēgīus, -a, -um (*rēx* king), royal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*rē-*
gnum rule), reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī (*regō* to rule), royal
power, sovereignty; government;
kingdom.

regredior, -gredi -gressus sum
(*re back*, *gradior* go), return.

rēiciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum (*re*
back, *iacō* throw), throw back,
hurl back. REJECT, REJEC-
TION.

religiō, -ōnis, f., RELIGION, sanc-
tity.

re-liquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lio-
tum (*re behind*, *linquō* leave),
leave behind, leave; quit, aban-
don. RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um (*relinquō* let re-
main), remaining, rest of.

re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī,
-mānsus (*re behind*, *maneō*
stay), stay behind, REMAIN.

reminiscor, *reminisci*, recall to
mind, recollect. REMINISCENCE.

re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī,
-mōtum (*re back*, *moveō* move),
REMOVE. REMOTE.

Remus, -i, m., twin brother of Romulus.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (re back, nūntiō bring word), report. **RENOUNCE.**

re-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (re again, parō prepare), renew, recruit.

repente, adv. (*repēns sudden*), suddenly.

reperiō, -perire, repperī, -pertum (re again, perīō produce), find, discover.

re-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (re again, pōnō place), place again, restore. **REPOSE.**

rēs, rei, f., thing, affair.

re-scindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum (re away, scindō, cut) cut away, destroy. **RESCIND.**

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi, -spōnsum (re in return, spondeō promise), reply, answer. **RESPOND.**

respōnsum, -i, n. (*respondeō, reply*), answer. **RESPONSE.**

res-pūblica, rei-pūblicae, f. (*rēs affair, pūblica belonging to the people*), **REPUBLIC**, commonwealth [see 110].

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (re again, statuō set up), restore. **RESTITUTION.**

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (re back, teneō hold), hold back, restrain, prevent. **RETENTION.**

reverentia, -ae, f. (*reverēor stand in awe of*), **REVERENCE.**

re-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum and

re-vertor, -verti, -versus sum (re back, vertō turn), turn back, return. **REVERT, REVERSION.**

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (re back, vocō call), call back. **REVOKE.**

rēx, rēgis, m., king. **REGAL.**

Rhea, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream).

rixor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*rixa quarrel*), to quarrel.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask, demand, request.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; **Rōmānus**, -i, m., a Roman.

Rōmulus, -i, m., the founder and first king of Rome; **Rōmulus Silvius**, a king of Alba.

rūpēs, rūpis, f. (*rumpō break*), rock, cliff.

S.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.

sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum**, **SACRED**; **sacra**, -ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites, sacrifices.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. (*sacer sacred, dō give*), priest; priestess.

saepe, **saeplus**, **saeplissimō**,
adv., *often*.

saepe-numerō, adv., *oftentimes*,
frequently.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**salūs**
greeting), greet, SALUTE. SAL-
UTATION.

sanguis, **sanguinis**, m., *blood*.
SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.

Santonēs, -um and **Santonī**,
-ōrum, m. pl., a people of
Aquitania.

sapientia, -ae, f. (**sapiēns** wise),
wisdom.

sarcina, -ae, f. (**sarcō** to patch),
bundle; pl., *baggage* carried
by soldiers. See **impedi-**
menta.

satis, adv., *enough*, *sufficiently*;
used adjectively in the sense
of *sufficient*.

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac-
tum (**satis** enough, **faciō** do),
enough, SATISFY, give SATIS-
FACTION.

Sāturnia, -ae, f., a town built by
Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.

Sāturnus, -ī, m. (**serō** sow), *Sat-*
urn, the father of Jupiter;
honored as the god of agri-
culture.

scelus, **sceleris**, n., *crime*, *guilt*,
wickedness.

sciō, **scire**, **scivī** and **scī**, **scī-**
tum, *know*, *understand*. SCI-
ENCE.

scribō, **scribere**, **scripsī**, **scrip-**
tum, *write*. SCRIBE, DE-
SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.

scūtum, -ī, n., a *shield*; [**scū-**
tum was an oblong *shield*,
made of wood, and covered
with leather; **clipeus**, a round
brass *shield*.]

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdēs, **sēdis**, f. (**sedeō** sit), *seat*;
dwelling-place; **sēdēs** **rēgni**,
seat of government.

Segūsiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., a
people of Gaul, neighbors of
the Allobroges and Aedui.

semel, adv., *once*.

semper, adv., *always*, *continually*.

senātor, -ōris, m. (**senex** old),
SENATOR.

senātus, -ūs, m. (**senex** old),
SENATE.

sēnī, -ae, -a (**sex** six), *six each*.

sententia, -ae, f. (**sentiō** think),
opinion. SENTENCE.

septem, num. adj. indecl.,
seven.

septemtriōnēs (**septentriōnēs**),
-um, m. pl., *the north*; sub
septemtriōnibus, *towards the*
north.

septimus, -a, -um (**septem** seven),
seventh.

Sēquana, -ae, m., a river of
Gaul, the modern *Seine*.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people
of Gaul, dwelling on the *Se-*
quana.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *of the Se-*
quani.

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus** sum,
follow; *accompany*. SE-
QUENCE.

sermō, sermōnis, m., discourse, conversation. **SERMON.**

servitūs, ūtis, f. (servus slave), slavery, bondage.

Servius, -i, m., Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.

servus, -i, m., slave, **SERVANT.**

sex, num. adj. indecl., six.

Sextus, -i, m., Sextus Pompeius, a son of Pompey the Great.

sī, conj., if; whether; see whether.

sic, adv., so, thus.

siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccum, -i, n., dry land.

sic-ut and sic-utī, adv., as; as if.

significō, -āre, āvi, -ātum (signum sign, faciō make), mean, **SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.**

signum, -i, n., sign, mark; **SIGNAL.**

silva, -ae, f., woods, forest. **SILVAN.**

Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Silvius, -i, m., name of several kings of Alba; Silvius Prociās, a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.

similis, simile, like, SIMILAR.

sīn, conj. (sī if, nō not), but if.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

singulī, -ae, -a, SINGLE, one by one; each.

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left. SINISTER.

socer, socerī, m., father-in-law.

socius, -i, m., ally. **AS-SOCI-ATE.**

sōl, sōlis, m., sun. **SOLAR.**

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis, f. (sōlus alone), desert; solitary place; **SOLITUDE.**

sōlum, adv. (sōlus alone), only, alone.

solum, -i, n., ground, **SOIL.**

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only [see 24].

sonitus, -ūs, m. (sonō make a noise), sound, noise.

sonus, -i, m. (sonō make a noise), noise.

soror, sorōris, f., sister.

spatium, -i, n., space; opportunity.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (speciō look), look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.

spēs, speī, f., hope, expectation.

spīritus, -ūs, m. (spīrō breathe), breath; pride; lofty airs.

sponte, f. abl. [gen. spontis; no other cases found], of free will; suā sponte, of his own free will. **SPONTANEOUS.**

statim, adv., immediately.

statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum (status standing), set up; put; establish; decide. **STATUTE.**

sterilis, -e, unfruitful, STERILE.

stipendium, -i, n. (stips contribution, pendō pay), tax, tribute. **STIPEND.**

stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj., tributary, subject to tribute.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand :
nōbis sanguine stat, it costs
us blood. STATE, STATION.
stolidus, -a, -um, foolish.
 STOLID.
strēnuus, -a, -um, bold, brave.
 STRENUOUS.
studeō, studēre, studui, nosup,
be eager or zealous, desire.
studium, -i, n. (studeō be eager),
zeal, desire. STUDY.
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suā-
sum, advise, PER-SUADE.
sub, prep. w. abl., under, beneath ;
in the time of ; sub mōnte, at
the foot of a mountain.
sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -du-
tum (sub from under, dūcō
draw), draw from under ; with-
draw ; take away.
sub-eō, -īre, -ivi and -ii, -itum
(sub under, eō go), go under ;
endure.
subitō, adv. (subitus sudden),
suddenly, quickly.
sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (sub
from beneath, levō lift up), raise
up, support ; help, aid.
sub-rideō, -ridēre, -risī, -risum
(sub a little, rideō laugh), smile.
subsiliō, -silire -silui, and -siliī,
no sup. (sub up, siliō leap),
leap up, jump.
sub-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vēc-
tum (sub from below, vehō
carry), bring up, transport.
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-
sum (sub behind, cēdō come),
 SUCCEED, follow. SUCCESSION.

Suēvi, -ōrum, m. pl., a power-
ful people of Germany.
**sui, of himself, herself, itself,
themselves [see 112]. SUI-
 CIDE. See caedō.
Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Cornelius
Sulla, a celebrated Roman.
sum, esse, fui, be [see 62].
summa, -ae, f. (summus highest),
amount, sum total. SUM.
summus, -a, -um, highest [posi-
tive superus, comparative
superior, superlative suprē-
mus and summus].
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmp-
tum, take, AS-SUME. AS-
 SUMPTION.
super, prep. w. acc. and abl.,
over, above, upon. SUPER-.
superbiō, -īre, no perf. nor sup.
(superbus proud), be proud of.
superbus, -a, -um, proud ; Su-
perbus, -i, m., the Proud, a
surname of the younger Tar-
quin, the last king of Rome.
superior, superius, upper, high-
er ; former. SUPERIOR. See
 superus.
superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (super
over), surmount, surpass, over-
come, subdue.
super-sum, -esse, -fui (super
over, beyond ; sum be), be over ;
survive.
superus, -a, -um [comp. supe-
rior, superl. suprēmus or
summus] (super over, above),
above, on high, upper.
supplicium, -i, n., punishment.**

suscipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-
tum (sub under, capio take),
undertake, take upon; engage
in; receive; sibi suscipere,
to take upon one's self.

suspicio, -ōnis, f. (susplor suspect), SUSPICION.

susplor, -ārī, -ātus sum (sus-
picio fr. sub secretly, specio look
at), SUSPECT.

sustineo, -tinere, -tinui, -ten-
tum (sub up, teneo hold), hold
up, SUSTAIN; endure; with-
stand.

suus, -a, -um (sui), his, his own;
her, her own; its, its own; their,
their own.

T.

T., abbreviation of **Titus**, a Ro-
man praenomen.

tabula, -ae, f., board; writing-
table; muster-roll. **TABLE**.

talentum, -ī, n., a **TALENT**, a
sum of money equal to about
\$1200.

tam, adv., so, so very.

tamen, adv., nevertheless; yet,
still.

tam-quam and **tanquam**, adv.
(tam so, quam as), as much as;
as if.

Tanaquil, -īlia, f., wife of Tar-
quinius Priscus.

tandem, adv., at length; at last.
tantus, -a, -um, so great, such,
so large.

tarditas, -ātis, f. (tardus slow),

slowness, **TARDINESS**; *heavi-
ness*.

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pro-
nounced *Tar-pē-ya*], daughter
of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēius, -a, -um, *Tarpeian* [pro-
nounced *Tar-pē-yan*]; **mōns**
Tarpēius, the *Tarpeian Rock*,
the name of a rock on the
Capitoline hill from which
criminals were thrown head-
long; the *Tarpeian Mount*.

Tarquini, -ōrum, m. pl., an
ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquin*, the
name of an illustrious Roman
family, of which two, *Priscus*
and *Superbus*, were kings.

tectum, -ī, n. (tegō to cover),
roof.

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon*, missile.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (tem-
pus a piece cut off), abstain.

TEMPER, **TEMPERATE**.

tempestās, -ātis, f. (tempus
time), *storm*; **TEMPEST**.

templum, -ī, n., **TEMPLE**.

tempus, **temporis**, n., *time*.

TEMPORAL

teneō, **tenere**. **tenui**, **tentum**,
*hold; have, possess; keep; re-
strain; memoriā tenere, to
remember*.

tener, **tenera**, **tenerum**, **TEN-**
DER, *delicate*.

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *try*.
TENTATIVE.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land, ground*.

TERRACE.

terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten,
TERRIFY.

territō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (terreō
frighten), terrify.

territōrium, -i, n. (terra earth),
TERRITORY.

tertiō, adv. (tertius third), the
third time.

testis, testis, m. and f., witness.
TESTIFY.

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly.

Ti., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a
Roman praenomen.

Tiberis, -is [acc. -im, abl. -i], m.,
the Tiber, a river in Italy on
which Rome is situated.

Tiberius, -i, m. See Ti.

timeō, -ēre, -ui, no supine, to fear.
timidus, -a, -um (timeō to fear),

TIMID; cowardly.

timor, timōris, m., fear. TIM-
OROUS.

tinnābulum, -i, n. (tinnō
to ring), bell.

Titus, -i, m. See T.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublā-
tum, lift, raise; pick up; re-
move, take away; destroy.

tonitrus, -ūs, m., and tonitrū,
n. indecl. (tonō to thunder),
thunder.

tonō, tonāre, tonui, tonitum,
thunder.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.

trādūcō and trānsdūcō, -dū-
cere, -dūxi, -ductum (trāns
across, dūcō lead), *lead across;*
lead; lead from one place to
another. TRADUCE.

trāns, prep. w. acc., across, over;
beyond. TRANS-

trāns-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum (trans
across, over; eō go), *go across*
or over; cross. TRANSIT,
TRANSITIVE, TRANSIENT,
TRANSITION.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum
(trāns across, ferō bear), bear
across; TRANSFER. TRANS-
LATION.

trānsigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum
(trāns through to the end, agō
bring), *bring to an end; spend.*
TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

trānsiliō or trānsiliō, -silire,
-silivi, -silii, or -silui, -sultum
(trāns over, salio leap), leap
over.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
(trāns across, portō carry),
carry across, TRANSPORT.
TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, tria [see 108], three.

Trēvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people
of Northern Gaul.

tribūnus, -i, m. (tribus tribe),
TRIBUNE; tribūnī militum,
military tribunes, of which offi-
cers each legion had six.

tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribū-
tum, give, grant, bestow.
TRIBUTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-
TRIBUTION.

tricōsimus, -a, -um (triginti
thirty), *thirtieth.*

triduum, -i, n. (trēs three, diēs
day), *three days.*

trigeminī, -ōrum, m. pl. (trēs

three, gignere be born), three brothers born at a birth.

trigintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty*.

tristis, **trista**, *sad, sorrowful*.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (triumphans a triumph), *to triumph*.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy, a city in the Northwestern part of Asia Minor*.

Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*.

tū, pers. pron., *thou, you* [see 118].

tuba, -ae, f. (akin to *tabus, a tube*), *trumpet*.

tubicen, -inis, m. (*tuba trumpet, canō to sound*), *trumpeter*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *a people of Southern Germany, neighbors of the Helvetii*.

Tullia, -ae, f., *daughter of Servius Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius Superbus*.

Tullius, -ī, m. See **Servius**.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome*.

tum, adv., *then; also; cum — tum, both — and*.

tumulus, -ī, m. (*tumēō swell*), *mound*.

turris, **turris**, f., *tower*. TURRET.

tūtōr, -ōris, m. (*tueor protect*), *guardian; TUTOR*.

tūtus, -a, -um (*tueor protect*), *safe*.

tūus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (*tū thou, you*), *thy, thine; your, yours*.

tyrannicus, -a, -um, adj., *despotic, tyrannical*.

tyrannus, -ī, m., *monarch; tyrant*.

U.

uber, **uberis**, n., *udder; teat*.

ubi, adv., *when, where*.

ulcisor, **ulcisci**, **ultus sum**, *take revenge; avenge*.

ullus, -a, -um, *any* [see 24].

ulterior, **ulterius** (*ulter that is beyond*), *farther* [see 55]. ULTERIOR.

ultimus, -a, -um, *last, uttermost, farthest*.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond*. ULTRA-

ūnā, adv. (*ūnus one and the same*), *at the same time; in company, together*.

unde, adv., *from which place; whence*.

undique, adv. (*unde, -que*), *from all parts; on all sides*.

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, single; one and the same; pl., alone* [see 24].

urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*. SUB-URBS.

usque, adv., *even; till*.

ūsus, -ūs, m. (*ūter use*), *USE; advantage*.

ut and **utī**, conj., *that, in order that; as*.

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, *which of two, which* [see 24].

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**; gen. **utriusque**, etc. [declined

like *uter*, see 24], each, both.

utilis, ūtile (*utor use*; suffix *-ilis* denoting *capability*), *useful, beneficial, profitable*.

utor, ūti, ūsus sum, USE, *make use of; adopt*.

utrum, adv. (*uter which of two*), *whether*.

uva, -ae, f., a grape; a bunch of grapes.

uxor, uxoris, f., wife.

V.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be unoccupied. VACATE, VACANT, VACATION.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty.

vadum, -ī, n. (*vadō go*), *ford, shallow*.

vāgitus, -ūs, m. (*vāgiō cry, squall*), *crying, squalling*.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum (*vagus roaming about*), *roam about, wander about*. VAGA-BOND.

valeō, -āre, -uī, -itum, PRE-VAİL.

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful*.

vāllum, -ī, n. (*vāllus the line of palisades, stakes, set about an intrenchment*), *rampart, intrenchment*.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *M. Varro*, a friend of Pompey the Great.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*vastus empty, desolate*), *lay waste*, DEVASTATE.

vēctigal, vēctigālīs, n. (*vehō carry*), *toll paid for carrying goods into a country; tax; revenue*.

vehementer, vehementius, vehementissimō, adv. (*vehemens violent*), *violently, severely; furiously; VEHEMENTLY*.

vel, conj., *or*; *vel — vel*, *either — or*.

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditum (*vēnaum sale, dō give*), *sell*. VEND.

venīō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come; arrive at*.

verber, -eris, n., *blow*. RE-VERBERATE.

verbum, -ī, n., *word*. VERB, VERBAL.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*.

vērō, adv. (*vērus true*), *in truth, truly; indeed; but*.

vescor, vescī, fill one's self with; live upon; eat.

Vesontīō, -ōnis, f., the chief town of the Sequani.

vesper, vesp̄eris and vesper, -ī, m., *evening star; evening; ad vesp̄erum, till evening*. VESPER, VESPER.

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta*, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.

Vestālīs, -e, of or belonging to Vesta, Vestal.

vester, vestra, vestrum, poss. pron., *your, yours*.

vetus, gen. **veteris**, *old, long standing, ancient*. **VETERAN**, **IN-VETER-ATE**.

vēxillum, -i, n. (**vēlum** sail), *standard*; *flag*.

vēxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vehō** carry), *trouble, annoy, harass*.

VEX, **VEXTION**, **VEXTIOUS**.
via, -ae, f., *way, road*; *path*; *march*.

vīcāsimus, -a, -um (**vīginti** twenty), *twentieth*.

vīctor, -ōris, m., *conqueror*.

vīctōria, -ae, f., **VICTORY**.

vīcus, -i, m., *village*.

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visum**, *see*.
videor, **vidēri**, **visus sum**, *pass.*
and *deponent*, *be seen*; *seem*;
seem good or proper.

vīgilia, -ae, f. (**vigilō** to watch),
watch; **dē tertiā vīgiliā**, *in*
the third watch. See **LN. LV.**,
NOTE 5.

vīginti, num. adj. indecl., *twenty*.
vincō, **vincere**, **vīci**, **victum**,
conquer.

vinculum, -i, n. (**vinciō** bind), *a*
chain; *in vincula conicere*,
to throw into prison.

vīndicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *claim*.
VINDICATE, **VINDICATION**.

vir, **viri**, m., *man*; *hero*; *husband*.

See **LN. XXV.**, **NOTE 1**.

virgō, -inis, f. (**virēō** flourish,
bloom), **VIRGIN**.

virtūs, **virtūtis**, f. (**vir** man, *hero*),
valor, courage; **VIRTUE**.

vis, **vis** [acc. **vim**, dat. and abl.
vī; pl. **virēs**, **virium**, **virī-**
bus, etc.], f., *strength, power*.

vita, -ae, f. (**vivō** live), *life*.
VITAL.

vītis, -is, f., *vine*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *shun*,
avoid.

vix, adv., *with difficulty*; *scarcely*,
hardly.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call*,
summon, invite. **VOCATION**,
VOCATIVE.

volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vol-**
nus wound), *to wound*.

volnus, **volneris**, *a wound*.
VULNER-ABLE.

volō, **velle**, **voluī**, *be WILLING*;
wish; *desire* [see **125**].

volpēs, -is, f., *fox*.

voluntās, -ātis, f. (**volō** to wish),
wish, consent. **VOLUNTARY**.

vōs, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see
112].

vōx, **vōcis**, f., **VOICE**. **VOCAL**.

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, possum.
about, w. numerals, ad, circiter.
abundance, cōpia.
accuse, accūsō.
across, trāns.
adopt, ātor.
advancing, veniēns.
advise, moneō.
affair, rēs.
after, prep. post; conj. post-
quam.
afterwards, postea.
against, in, contrā.
aid, auxilium; to aid, iuvō.
all, every, omnis; pl. omnēs;
all, the whole, tōtus.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, prope.
alone, sōlus.
also, etiam.
although, cum, etsi.
ambassador, lēgātus.
among, apud, inter, in.
and, et, atque, que; both — and,
et — et.
animal, animal.
announce, nūntiō.
any, quis, ullus.
anything, quid, aliquid (116, a).
appoint, creō.

arms, arma.
army, exercitus, āgmen.
around, circum.
arrival, adventus.
arrive, perveniō.
ascertain, cōgnōscō.
as soon as, postquam; as soon
as possible, quam primum.
ask, quaerō; ask for, rogō.
assembly, conveniō.
assembly, concilium.
assist, adsum.
at home, domi.
attack, impetus; to attack, op-
pugnō.
attempt, cōnor.
at Caesar's feet, Caesarī ad
pedēs.
auxiliaries, auxilia.
avoid, vitō.
away, take away, tollō.

B.

bad, malus.
baggage, impedimenta.
bank, ripa.
battle, proelium, pūgna.
be, sum; be present, adsum; be
from or distant, absum.
beautiful, pulcher.
because, quod, quia.

become, *fiō*; become master of, *potior*.

before, *ante*, *prō*; *priusquam*.

beg for, *petō*.

beginning, *initium*.

besiege, *oppugnō*.

best, *optimus*.

betake myself, *mē cōnferō*, *mē recipiō*.

better, *melior*.

between, *inter*.

big, *māgnus*.

bold, *audāx*.

born, be born, *nāscor*.

both, *uterque*; both — and, *et* — *et*.

boy, *puer*.

brave, *fortis*.

bravely, *fortiter*.

break up (camp), (*castra*) *moveō*.

bridge, *pōns*.

bring, *ferō*; bring upon, *inferō*.

broad, *lātus*.

brother, *frāter*.

building, *aedificium*.

burn, *incendō*, *cremō*; burn up, *exūrō*, *combūrō*.

but if, *sīn*.

buy, *emō*.

by, *ā*, *ab*; by no means, *minimō*.

C.

call, summon, *vocō*; call, name, *appellō*; call together, *convo-
cō*; call to mind, *commemorō*.
camp, *castra*; pitch a camp, *cas-
tra pōnō*; break up camp, *cas-
tra moveō*.

can, *possum*.

capture, *expugnō*.

carry, carry on, *gerō*; carry on
war, *bellum gerō*; *bellō*.

cart, *carrus*.

cause, *causa*.

cavalry, *equitātus*; of cavalry,
equester.

cavalryman, *eques*.

censure, *accūsō*.

character, *nātūra*.

chief, *princeps*.

choose, *creō*.

citadel, *arx*.

citizen, *civis*.

city, *urbs*.

cliff, *rūpēs*.

cold, *frīgus*.

collect, *comportō*, *cōnferō*, *cōn-
ducō*.

come, *veniō*; come together, *con-
veniō*; come to, *pervenio*.

comitium, *comitium*.

command, be in command of, *prae-
sum*.

company, in company, *unā*.

complain, *queror*.

conceal, *occultō*.

concerning, *dē*.

confidence, *fidēs*.

congratulate, *grātulor*.

conquer, *vincō*.

consent, *voluntās*.

consider, *habeō*, *ducō*.

conspiracy, *coniūratiō*.

consul, *cōsul*; in the consulship
of Caesar, *Caesare cōnsule*.

continually, *continenter*.

corn, *frūmentum*.

could, past tense of *possum*.
council, *concilium*.
counsel, *cōnsilium*.
country, *fatherland*, *patria*.
cowardly, *Ignāvus*.
cross, *trānseō*.

D.

danger, *pericūlum*.
dangerous, *periculōsus*.
daughter, *filia*.
dawn, at the earliest dawn, *primā lūce*.
day, *diēs* ; at daybreak, *primā lūce* ; on the day before, *prīdiū*.
death, *mors*.
deceive, *dōcipiō*.
decide, *statuō*.
decision, *iūdicium*.
deep, *altus*.
defend, *dēfendō*.
delay, *moror*.
deliberate, *dēliberō*.
demand, *postulō*, *poscō*.
depart, *discēdō*.
departure, *profectiō*.
describe, *dēsignō*.
design, *cōnsilium*.
desire, *studium*, *cupiditas*.
desirous, *cupidus*.
destroy, *dōleō*.
destruction, *perniciēs*.
determine, *iūdicō*.
devastate, *vāstō*.
die, *moriōr*.
differ, *differō*.
difficulty, *angustiae* ; with difficulty, *vix*.

dig, *fodiō*.
direction, *pars*.
distance, *spatium*.
distant, be distant ; *absum* ; most distant, *extrēmus*.
distinguished, *nōbilis*.
disturb, *commoveō*.
ditch, *fossa*.
divulge, *ēnūntiō*.
do, *faciō*.
draw, *dūcō*.
dwell, *incolō*.

E.

each, to each other, *inter sē*.
easily, *facile*.
easy, *facilis* ; very easy, *perfacilis*.
either — or, *aut* — aut.
elect, *creō*.
embassy, *legātiō*.
empire, *imperium*.
empty, *infiuō*.
encamp, *castra pōnō* ; *cōnsidō*.
encompass, *contineō*.
encourage, *cōnfirmō*.
end, *finis*.
endeavor, *nītor*.
endure, *subeō*.
enemy, *hostis*.
enervate, *effēminō*.
entire, *tōtus*.
entreat, *implōrō*, *orō*.
equal, *pār*, *aequus*.
establish, *cōnfirmō*.
even, not even, *nē* — *quidem*.
excel, *praecēdō*, *praestō*.
exhort, *hortor*.
expectation, *spēs*.

extraordinary, incredibilis.
eye, oculus.

F.

far, by far, longē; very far, longissimē.
farther, adj., ulterior; adv., longius.
father, pater.
father-in-law, socer.
fatherland, patria.
favor, faveō.
fear, timor; to fear, timeō, vereor.
few, pauci.
field, ager.
fifteen, quindecim.
fifth, quintus.
fight, pugnō.
find, reperio.
fire, ignis; set on fire, incendō.
first, primus; in the first part of the night, primā nocte.
five, quinque.
flee, fugiō.
flight, fuga.
flow, fluō.
follow, sequor.
fond, cupidus.
foot, pēs; at the foot of the mountain, sub monte.
for, dē w. abl., ad w. acc.; for this reason, hōc, eō.
foraging, pābulātiō.
forest, silva.
forget, obliviscor.
former, pristinus, vetus.
forth, lead forth, ēdūcō.

fortify, mūniō.
fortune, fōrtūna.
forward, send forward, prae-mittō; move forward, prō-moveō.
free, liber; of one's own free will, suā sponte.
friend, amicus.
friendly, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
from, from near, ā, ab; from out of, ē, ex.
furiously, vehementer.
furnish, faciō.
furthermost, extrēmus.
future, in the future, in reliquum tempus.

G.

garrison, praesidium.
general, imperator.
generosity, liberalitās.
get possession of, potior.
get rid of, dēpōnō.
girl, puella.
give, dō; give orders, imperō; give satisfaction, satisfaciō.
glory, glōria.
go, eō; go forth, exeō.
god, deus.
goddess, dea.
gone, perf. part. of exigō.
good, bonus.
government, imperium.
grandfather, avus.
grant, concēdō.
great, magnus; so great, tantus.
grievous, gravis.
guard, custōa.

H.

happen, accidō, fiō.
happy, fēlix.
harass, vēxō.
hasten, mātūrō, contendō, accurrō.
have, habeo.
he says, dicit.
hear, audiō.
height, altitūdō.
help, iuvō.
hem in, contineō.
high, altus.
highest, summus.
hill, collis.
hindrance, impedimentum.
his, his own, suus.
hither, citior.
hold, habeo, obtineō, teneō;
hold a conference, conloquor.
home, at home, domi; homeward, domum; from home, domo.
hope, spēs.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hōra.
house, domus.
hurl, coniciō.
husband, vir.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
implore, implorō.
import, importō.
in, into, in.
incite, faciō.

influence, auctoritās.
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesarem certiorē facio.
infuse, iniciō.
inquire, quaerō.
insult, contumēlia.
intervene, intersum.
invile, arceō.

J.

just, iustus.

K.

keep, teneō; keep from, prohibeo.
kill, caedō, interficiō.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rēx.
know, sciō; know, find out, cognoscō; not know, nesciō.

L.

land, terra.
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multo die.
law, lēx, iūs.
lay waste, vāstō.
lead, dūcō; lead forth, edūcō.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquo.
left, sinister.
legate, lēgātus.
legion, legiō.
letter, epistola.

levy on, *impōnō*.
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*.
 like, *similis*.
 line of battle, *aciēs*.
 little, *paulus*; a little, *paulō*.
 lofty airs, *spīritus*.
 long, for a long time, *diū*; longer,
diūtius.
 look at, *intueor*; look out for,
prōspiciō.
 love, *amor*; to love, *amō*.

M.

make, *faciō*; make or deliver a
 speech, *orātiōnem habeo*;
 make haste, *mātūrō*; make
 upon, *inferō*.
 man, *vir*, *homō*.
 manner, in such a manner, *ita*.
 many, *multi*.
 march, *iter*; to march, *iter*
facere.
 marriage, *mātrimōnium*; to give
 in marriage, in *mātrimōnium*
dare.
 master, become master of, *potior*.
 means, by no means, *minimō*; by
 means of, see 54.
 memory, *memoria*.
 mile, *mille passuum*.
 mind, *animus*, *mēns*.
 misfortune, *incommodum*.
 missile, *tēlum*.
 month, *mēnsis*.
 more, *magis*, *amplius*; be more
 willing, *malō*.
 mother, *māter*.
 mountain, *mōns*.

move, *moveō*; move forward,
prōmoveō.
 much, *multus*.
 multitude, *multitūdō*.
 murder, *caedēs*; to murder, *cae-*
dō, *occidō*.
 my, my own, *meus*.

N.

narrow pass, *angustiae*.
 nature, *nātūra*.
 near, *circum*, *ad*.
 nearest, *proximus*.
 nearly, *fere*.
 neighbors, *finitimī*.
 neither — nor, *neque — neque*.
 nine, *novem*.
 no, none, *nūllus*.
 nobility, *nōbilitās*.
 noble, *nōbills*.
 none the less, *nihilō minus*.
 not, *nōn*; not — even, *nō —*
quidem.
 nothing, *nihil*.
 notice, *animadvertō*.
 number, *numerus*.

O.

obtain, *obtineō*, *cōnsequor*.
 occupy, *occupō*.
 often, *saepe*.
 old, *vetus*, *nātus*.
 on, upon, *in*.
 on account of, *propter*.
 on all sides, *undique*.
 on the day before, *pridie*.
 one, *ūnus*.

one by one, singulī.
one party — the other, alterī —
alterī.
opinion, sententia.
opportunity, potestās, facultās.
or, aut, vel, an.
order, give orders, imperō.
other, alius; to each other, from
each other, inter sē.
ought, oportet, debet. See also
 LN. LXX.
our, our own, noster.
out, set out, proficiscor; out of,
ē, ex.
overcome, superō.
own, his own, suus; my own,
meus; your own, tuus, ve-
ster; their own, suus.

P.

pace, passus.
part, pars.
party, one party — the other, al-
teri — alterī.
pass the winter, hiemō.
peace, pax.
people, populus.
peril, periculum.
persist, perseverō.
persuade, persuadē.
pitch a camp, castra pōnō.
place, locus; place, put, pōnō.
plan, cōsiliū.
please, placeō.
pledge, fidēs.
poor, pauper.
possession, possessiō; get posses-
sion of, potior.

power, royal power, sovereign
power, rēgnū.
practicable, facilis.
practice, exercitiū.
praetor, praetor.
prepare, comparō.
present, be present, adsum.
press, press upon, premō.
prevail upon, permovē.
prevent, retineō.
price, pretium.
private, privātus.
proceed, prōcēdō.
promise, polliceor.
protection, praesidiū.
province, prōvincia.
provisions, cōmeātus.
pursue, persequor.
put off, cōnferō.

R.

ready, parātus.
rear of an army, āgmen novis-
simū.
reason, causa.
recall to mind, reminiscor.
recent, recēns.
refinement, hūmānitās.
reign, rēgnō.
rejoice, laetor.
relief, subsidium.
remain, maneo.
remaining, reliquus.
remember, meminī; memoriā
teneō.
remembrance, memoria.
remove, moveō, removē.

reply, *respōnsum*; to reply, *re-
spondeō*.
report, *ṇūntiō*.
resolve, *cōnstituō*.
rest, the rest, *cōteri*; rest of,
 reliquus.
restrain, *retineō*, *prohibeō*.
return, *revertor*, *revertō*.
revenue, *vōctigal*.
reward, *praemium*.
rich, *dives*.
ridge, *lugum*.
right, *dexter*.
ripe, *mātūrus*.
river, *flūmen*.
road, *via*.
rout, *pellō*.
route, *iter*.
royal power, *rēgnum*.
ruin, *perniciōs*.

S.

sad, *tristis*.
sake, for the sake of, *causā*.
same, the same, *idem*.
satisfaction, give satisfaction, *sa-
tisfaciō*.
satisfy, *satisfaciō*.
say, *dicō*; he says, *dicit*.
sea, *mare*.
see, *videō*.
seem, *videor*; it seems good, *vidē-
tur*.
seize, *occupō*.
select, *dēligō*.
sell, *vēndō*.
senator, *senātor*.
send, *mittō*; send forward, *prae-
mittō*.

separate, *dividō*.
set on fire, *incendō*.
set out, *proficiscor*.
severely, *graviter*, *vehementer*.
ship, *navis*.
short, *brevis*; shortest way or
 route, *proximum iter*.
show, *probō*.
shun, *vītō*.
side, this side of, *citrā*.
sides, on all sides, *undique*.
sight, *cōspectus*.
signal, *signum*.
since, *cum*.
single, *ūnus*.
sister, *soror*.
skilful, *peritus*.
slave, *servus*.
slavery, *servitūs*.
small, *parvus*.
so, ita; with adjectives, *tam*; so
 great, *tantus*.
soldier, *miles*.
some, some one, *aliquis*. See
 116, a.
son, *filius*; son-in-law, *gener*.
soon, *mātūrē*.
sovereignty, sovereign power, *rē-
gnum*.
Spain, *Hispania*.
speak, *loquor*.
speech, *ōrātiō*; make, deliver a
 speech, *ōrātiōnem habeō*.
stand, *stō*.
state, *civitas*.
station, *conlocō*, *cōstituō*.
stay, *maneō*.
storm, *expugnō*.
strengthen, *cōfirmō*.

strive, *nitor*.
such, *tantus*.
sufficient, *sufficiently*, *satis*; with
sufficient ease, *satis commodē*.
suitable, *idōneus*, *commodus*.
summer, *aestās*.
summon, *vocō*, *convocō*.
sunset, *occāsus sōlis*.
supply, *ōpīa*; *supplies*, *rēs frū-*
mentāria, *commeātus*.
surround, *cingō*.
survive, *supersum*.
suspicion, *auspicīō*.
swiftly, *celeriter*.

T.

take, *capture*, *capīō*, *expūgnō*;
take away, *tollō*; *take to one's*
self, *sūmō*.
tarry, *moror*.
teach, *doceō*.
ten, *decem*.
tend, *pertineō*.
territory, *ager*, *finēs*.
than, *quam*.
that, *ille*.
that, in order *that*, *ut*; after verbs
of fearing, *nō*.
that not, *nō*; after verbs of fear-
ing, *ut*.
the same, *idem*.
there, in *that place*, *ibi*.
their, *their own*, *suus*.
they, *them*, see LN. LVIII.,
NOTE 2.
thing, *rēs*.
think, *putō*, *arbitror*.

third, *tertius*.
this, *hic*.
those, *illi*.
three days, *trīdium*.
three hundred, *trecentī*.
through, *per*.
throw one's self, *sē prōicere*.
till evening, *ad vesp̄erum*.
time, *tempus*; for a long time,
diū.
to, *ad*.
to-day, *hōdiē*.
together, *come together*, *conveniō*.
tongue, *lingua*.
top of the mountain, *summus*
mōns.
towards, *ad*; *towards the north*,
sub septemtrionibus.

tower, *turris*.
town, *oppidum*.
trader, *mercātor*.
train up, *instituō*.
tribute, *stipendium*.
troops, *ōpīae*.
try, *ōnor*.
twenty, *vigintī*.
two days, *bīdium*.

U.

under, *sub*.
unoccupied, *be unoccupied*, *vacō*.
until, *dum*.
unwilling, *be unwilling*, *nōlō*.
upon, *in*.
upper, *superior*.
urge, *hortor*.
use, *utor*; *'make use of*, *utor*.
useful, *ūtilis*.

V.

valor, virtūs.

very, valdē; very easy, perfacilis; very great, m̄ximus; very is often rendered by ipse: e. g. the very city, urbs ipsa.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of,

ad w. name of town in acc.

victory, victōria.

W.

wage, gerō.

wages, mercēs.

wagon, carrus.

wait, expectō.

walled town, oppidum.

wanting, be wanting, dēsum.

war, bellum.

waste, lay waste, vāstō.

watch, vigilia; in the third watch,

dē tertiā vigiliā.

way, via.

we, nōs. See LN. LVII.

wealthy, cōpiōsus.

weapon, tēlum.

weep, fleō; weeping, flēns.

what? quid?

what sort of a? quī? See LN.

LX.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, utrum.

which, quod.

while, dum.

who, quī; who? quis?

whole, tōtus.

why? quid?

wide, lātus.

willing, be willing, volō.

win, conciliō.

wing of an army, cornū.

winter, pass the winter, hiemō.

winter-quarters, hiberna.

wish, volō.

with, cum.

withdraw, sē recipere.

without, sine.

withstand, sustineō.

witness, testis.

woman, mulier.

word, verbum.

worthy, dignus.

wound, volnus; to wound, volnerō.

write, scribō.

wrong, infūria.

Y.

year, annus.

yet, tamen.

yoke, iugum.

you, tū, vōs. See LN. LVII.

your, tuus, vester.

youth, adolēscēns.

